

О. В. Афанасьева, И. В. Михеева



АНГЛИЙСКИЙ ЯЗЫК

как второй иностранный

3-й год обучения



дрофа

О. В. Афанасьева, И. В. Михеева

 | **Р**оссийский
учебник

АНГЛИЙСКИЙ ЯЗЫК

как второй иностранный

3-й год обучения

Учебник

Рекомендовано
Министерством просвещения
Российской Федерации

6-е издание, исправленное

Москва

 ДРОФД

2019



UNIT ONE

Travelling in Russia and Abroad¹



Step One

Do It Together

1. Listen to the text, (1). Who visited these places last summer?

Example: Mary was in St Petersburg.
Peter and Bob were in Blackpool.



1) Sasha

a) Moscow



2) Betty and Polly

b) Canada



3) the Barkers

c) the Lake District



4) Roy

d) Russia



5) the Browns

e) England



6) Jim

f) Rome

¹ **abroad** [ə'brɔ:d] — за границей





7) Bob and Andrew g) Spain



8) Dolly h) Brighton



9) Cathie and her brother i) Florida, the USA



10) Natasha and her family j) France



Британский музей (The British Museum) — один из самых известных музеев Лондона. В музее можно увидеть произведения искусства древности, коллекции монет, рисунков, рукописей и даже древнеегипетские мумии в саркофагах. Музей был открыт в 1759 году, современное здание музея было построено к 1852 году по проекту Роберта Смирка (Robert Smirke [smɜ:k]).

Британская библиотека долгое время была частью музея. Во время посещения музея можно попасть в знаменитый читальный зал, где когда-то работали известные учёные и писатели, например Диккенс, Теккерей и Бернард Шоу.

Трафальгарская площадь (Trafalgar Square) расположена в самом центре Лондона. Она была названа так в память об адмирале лорде Нельсоне и его блистательной победе над наполеоновской эскадрой у мыса Трафальгар в 1805 году. Пятидесятиметровая колонна с фигурой Нельсона наверху в центре площади — памятник великому флотоводцу.

Площадь играет важную роль в жизни города. Здесь проводятся политические демонстрации, сюда к новогодней ёлке приходят встречать праздник лондонцы.

Сити (the City) — деловая часть Лондона. Она занимает площадь в одну квадратную милю (около двух с половиной квадратных километров). В этой части города мало жителей, но каждое утро сюда приезжают многочисленные служащие, работающие в сотнях банков и офисов, расположенных в Сити.

2. Say what places Olga and Vera visited in London in August.

Example: They visited the British Museum.



The British Museum



The City



Trafalgar Square



Westminster Abbey



The Houses of Parliament



The Tower of London



Hyde Park

3. Here is Olga's letter to her mother. What regular and irregular verbs in past simple¹ did she use in it?

Dear Mum,

London is wonderful! Yesterday Jane took me to the City and the Tower of London. She showed me Trafalgar Square. I enjoyed all those places. We had lunch in a small café near the Houses of Parliament. I wrote and sent you a postcard² with a picture of Trafalgar Square. In the evening we watched television and spoke about London. We are going to visit Oxford and Glasgow soon. I'm very happy. I'm writing this letter in 'English to practise'³ it.

Lots of love,

Olga

4. Listen,  (2), and learn some verb forms⁴.

can — could

drive — drove

swim — swam

get (up) — got (up)

put — put

say — said

5. Say what the English schoolchildren could see and visit in Moscow.

Example: They could see Moscow shops.

They could visit the Children's Puppet⁵ Theatre.



1. The Kremlin

¹ regular and irregular verbs in past simple — правильные и неправильные глаголы в прошедшем простом времени

² a postcard [ˈpɒstkɑ:d] — почтовая открытка

³ to practise [ˈpræktɪs] — практиковаться (правильный глагол)

⁴ verb forms — глагольные формы

⁵ a puppet [ˈpʊpɪt] — кукла-марионетка



2



3



4



5



6



7

2. Red Square
3. The Kremlin Palace
4. The Children's Puppet Theatre

5. The Bolshoi Theatre
6. The Maly Theatre
7. Moscow shops



8



10



9

8. Moscow Zoo

9. Gorky Park

10. The Rodina Cinema

6. Sam is a painter. These are the things he usually does. Say what he did yesterday. Check and repeat¹, 🗣️ (3).

Example: Sam goes to Hyde Park every day.

Sam went to Hyde Park yesterday.

- 1) Sam gets up at seven o'clock in the morning.
- 2) Sam puts his lunch in his bag.
- 3) Sam says goodbye to his wife Jane.
- 4) Sam drives to the city swimming pool.
- 5) Sam swims in the swimming pool.
- 6) Sam drives to Hyde Park to paint pictures.
- 7) At four o'clock Sam puts his paints in his bag.
- 8) Sam drives his car home.
- 9) Sam says hello to his wife Jane.
- 10) Sam enjoys his evening at home.



¹ Check and repeat. — Проверьте себя и повторите.

7. Say what Sam and Jane did last Saturday. Check and repeat, (4).



met, drove, drank, said, made, listened,
saw, had, read, got up, came, took,
wrote, began

Example: Sam and Jane *got up* very late, at 11 o'clock.

- 1) They ... their breakfast in a small café.
- 2) They ... their friends, Kate and Jim, near the cinema.
- 3) They all ... a new interesting film.
- 4) They ... to the Italian Pizza House to have dinner.
- 5) After dinner Sam and Jane ... goodbye to their friends.
- 6) Sam and Jane ... home at six o'clock.
- 7) At home they ... tea and ... it with some chocolate cake.
- 8) In the evening Sam and Jane ... to music and ... books.
- 9) Jane ... a letter to her mother in Brighton.
- 10) Sam ... a shower and Jane — a bath.
- 11) Sam and Jane ... watching television late at night.

8. What are Robert and Jim going to do on Saturday?

Example: Robert is going to get up early.
Robert and Jim are going to fly to Glasgow.

Robert	is are	going	to get up early. to have coffee. to wash up after breakfast. to do his room.
Jim			to take a shower. to help his brother in the kitchen. to drive to the airport.
Robert and Jim			to fly to Glasgow. to do Glasgow. to visit Glasgow museums. to come to London.

9. A. Say what Robert and Jim were going to do in Glasgow.

Example: Jim was going to enjoy Glasgow parks.
Robert and Jim were going to meet their cousins.

Robert	was were	going	to see a lot of places. to enjoy Glasgow parks. to visit Glasgow museums.
Jim			to walk in the streets of the city. to have lunch in a café. to go to the cinema. to take a bus to the city park.
Robert and Jim			to meet their cousins. to send a postcard to their mum. to write to their friend.

B. Say what the brothers were not (weren't) going to do in Glasgow.

Example: Jim was not (wasn't) going to run in the park.
The brothers were not going to fly a kite in Glasgow.

Robert	was not wasn't were not weren't	going	to go to the theatre. to play football with friends. to see his old friends.
Jim			to run in the park. to sit on the bench in the park. to ride bicycles in the street. to listen to music.
Robert and Jim			to watch <i>The News</i> on television. to fly a kite in Glasgow. to swim in the lake.

10. Say what you were going to do last summer and what you did.

Example: I was going to swim a lot. I often swam last summer.

Do It on Your Own**11. Complete the sentences¹.**

Example: My classes (begin) at 9 o'clock yesterday.
My classes began at 9 o'clock yesterday.

- 1) My sister (speak) English when she was in London.
- 2) When Jane was a little girl, she (can) read very well.

¹ Complete [kəm'pli:t] the sentences. — Закончите предложения.

- 3) Yesterday evening we (see) our friends.
- 4) Mum and dad (give) me this bike for my birthday.
- 5) Last summer we (have) a holiday at the sea.
- 6) I (put) this letter in the letter box two days ago.
- 7) Last winter my brother (take) me to the Bolshoi Theatre.
- 8) Yesterday I (get) up late and my father (drive) me to school.

12. Write 10 things that you were/weren't going to do last summer and 5 things you did.

Example: I was/wasn't going to play football. I rode a horse.

13. Check yourself.

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
11	8	
12	15	

Step Two

Do It Together

1. Listen to the text, (5). Say what Ronald, a child prodigy¹, could do when he was three.

- | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| 1) play the piano | 7) write |
| 2) count to one hundred | 8) dance |
| 3) drive a car | 9) play tennis |
| 4) work on the computer | 10) understand Italian |
| 5) speak French | 11) spell long words |
| 6) read books | 12) swim |



MEMO

Чтобы сказать по-английски «не мог», «не умел», «не могла», «не умела», «не могли», «не умели», нужно просто добавить к модальному глаголу (could) отрицание **not**.
 I could not read when I was 4. He could not write when he was 4.
 Сокращённо это можно написать так: could not = couldn't [kɒdnɪt].

¹ a child prodigy ['prɒdɪdʒ] — вундеркинд, одарённый ребёнок

2. Say what they could and couldn't do in the Middle Ages¹. Check and repeat, (6).



- 1) In the Middle Ages they ... write and read books.
- 2) They ... fly planes.
- 3) They ... watch television.
- 4) They ... travel by plain.
- 5) They ... ride horses.
- 6) They ... travel by sea.
- 7) They ... drive cars.
- 8) They ... ride bikes.
- 9) They ... play computer games.
- 10) They ... make houses and castles.
- 11) They ... cook food in the kitchen.
- 12) They ... listen to tape recorders.
- 13) They ... play chess.
- 14) They ... speak on the telephone.
- 15) They ... eat cheeseburgers and drink Coke.



3. Say what you could and couldn't do when you were five years old.

Example: I could swim.
I couldn't play volleyball.

4. Listen, (7), repeat these verb forms.

know — knew	teach — taught
think — thought	ride — rode



5. Read the sentences in a) present simple², b) past simple³.

1) When Jane was in St Petersburg, she visited a lot of museums.
2) My brother Tom thinks he can speak French. 3) I know that the Greens live in Scotland. 4) Andrew taught me to count when I was little. 5) Boris knew Helen's telephone number. 6) In January Alice thought a lot about her summer holidays. 7) We all wanted to go to the Black Sea. 8) The children rode their bikes in the park. 9) In summer the children ran a lot and played with a ball. 10) Willy came home late. 11) I always get up early in the morning.

¹ the Middle Ages [ˌmɪdl 'iːdʒɪz] — Средние века, Средневековье

² in present ['prezənt] simple — в настоящем простом времени

³ in past [pɑːst] simple — в прошедшем простом времени

12) James spent last summer in Italy. 13) When we travel, we can see a lot of interesting places. 14) Bob drove to the country in his car.

6. Learn¹ how to pronounce and use the new words, 🗣️ (8).



A.

back [bæk] — назад

beach [bi:tʃ] — пляж

boat [bəʊt] — лодка, шлюпка, небольшой корабль

diary ['daɪəri] — дневник

fun [fʌn] — веселье, забава, шутка

rain [reɪn] — 1. дождь;

2. идти (о дожде)

sand [sænd] — песок

stay [steɪ] — останавливаться, оставаться

terrible ['terɪbəl] — ужасный

trip [trɪp] — поездка, путешествие

B.

back: to come back, to go back, to give back. Sam comes back from school at five. Give me back my pen, please. Put the book back on the shelf.

beach: nice beaches, on the beach. There were a lot of children on the beach. Come to the beach in the morning.

boat: a lot of boats, a motor boat. There were a lot of boats on the lake.

go boating: Last Sunday we went boating with our friends.

diary: two diaries, Yura's diary, to write in a diary. Roger writes about his school, his friends and holidays in his diary.

fun: to have (a lot of) fun, to get fun, to be fun. We had fun traveling in the country. There is no fun in spending the evening at home. Have fun! Swimming in the sea is fun.

rain — rained: It usually rains in autumn. Does it sometimes rain in winter? It doesn't often rain here. It is raining now, stay at home. Is it raining? It rained yesterday.

sand: yellow sands, to play in/on the sand. Little Lizzy played on the yellow sand near the tent. A sandcastle, to make sandcastles. Children like to make sandcastles on the beach.

stay — stayed: to stay in (at) a hotel, to stay at home. Stay where you are. They stayed at the Ritz when they were in London. I never stay at hotels when I travel by car.

¹ to learn [lɜ:n] — учиться

terrible: terrible food, terrible weather, a terrible wind. We had a terrible time on holiday. We had terrible weather last weekend — it rained all Saturday and Sunday.

trip: short trips, a long trip, to go on a bus (boat) trip, a trip to the country, to have a trip, to take (make) a trip. Last Thursday we went on a bus trip to London. I am going to write to my granny about my trip to the country.

7. Look at the pictures. What is the weather like? Where are the children? What are they doing? Check and repeat, (9).

Example: 1. The weather (It) is sunny and hot.
The children are on the beach. They are having fun.



1



2



3



4



5



6



7



8

1	sunny/on the beach/have fun
2	rainy/stay at home/write a diary

3	windy, foggy, cold/in the street/run back home
4	warm/on the beach/stay in the sun
5	hot/on the beach/make a sandcastle
6	nice and warm/in the country/have fun
7	not very warm/in the boat/go on a boat trip
8	terrible/in the sea/fish

8. A. Yura wants to practise English and writes his diary in English. Read a page from¹ his diary. Say where Yura went for his summer holidays.

9 September

Goodbye, summer! I think my summer holidays were wonderful this year. I had a lot of fun. In June my family and I went to the Black Sea. We stayed three weeks at a hotel in Sochi. The weather was hot and sunny when we went to the beach every day. We swam a lot and stayed in the sun. My father taught me to boat, and we often went boating and fishing early in the morning.

In July we came back to Moscow. My parents began working and I made a trip to St Petersburg to visit my grandfather who lives there. My sister Lena went to Yaroslavl to stay with our cousin Marina.

Lena and I came back home in the middle of the month. After that we made day trips to some interesting places in and near Moscow. We were in the Kremlin museums, the Pushkin Museum and Arkhangelskoye. We were going to the Vladimir tour but couldn't. The weather was terrible that day, it rained and it was very windy and cold.

In the middle of August Lena and I went to London to visit the Barkers, and we had a wonderful time there. Now I'm back at school and happy to see my friends again. In summer I made a lot of pictures. I'm going to send some to London, to my friend John Barker.

- B. Listen and read,  (10).

¹ a page [peɪʤ] from... — страница из...



9. Read Yura's diary again. Say true or false¹.

Example: Yura is writing his diary in August.

It's false. He is writing it in September.

- 1) Summer is coming.
- 2) Yura liked his summer holidays a lot.
- 3) His family went to the sea in June.
- 4) The weather was hot but rainy.
- 5) Yura couldn't stay in the sun.
- 6) Yura's father taught him to fish.
- 7) They went fishing in the morning.
- 8) In August Yura stayed in Moscow.
- 9) Lena visited her cousin in summer.
- 10) Yura and Lena couldn't go to Vladimir.
- 11) Yura and Lena couldn't go to the Kremlin.
- 12) Now Yura goes to school again.
- 13) Yura is going to send some books to his friend John.
- 14) Yura visited the Barkers in Glasgow.
- 15) Yura had fun at the Barkers' place.

Do It on Your Own

10. Complete these sentences with the new words.

- 1) We had a lot of f... at Mike's party yesterday.
- 2) My t... from London to Brighton wasn't long.
- 3) I hated my summer holidays. I think they were t... .
- 4) When do English pupils go b... to school after holidays?
- 5) The weather is bad and I'd like to s... at home.
- 6) Look, it is r...ing again!
- 7) Who t... you to play chess?
- 8) I like playing with a ball on the b... .
- 9) I th... about you when I was in London.
- 10) I have a d... and write in it about my family, school and friends.
- 11) I can't walk, there's s... in my shoes.

11. Say what you could do in summer but couldn't do in winter.

In summer

- 1) I could swim in summer.
- 2) _____.
- 3) _____.
- 4) _____.
- 5) _____.

In winter

- 1) I couldn't swim in winter.
- 2) _____.
- 3) _____.
- 4) _____.
- 5) _____.

¹ true [tru:] or false [fɔ:ls] — верно или нет

12. Check yourself.

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
10	11	
11	10	

Step Three

Do It Together

1. Look at the picture and say what they are doing on the beach. Check and repeat, (11).

Example: The old woman is coming into the hotel.



- 1) The boys ...
- 2) The dog ...
- 3) The father ...
- 4) The children on the sand ...
- 5) The boy at the hotel ...
- 6) The girls ...
- 7) The birds ...
- 8) They are all having ...

2. Match the words¹.

Example: make a sandcastle

do	the beach
make	a diary
leave	the city
go on	the hotel
write in	fun
play on	a sandcastle
swim in	a trip
stay in	the sea
have	

3. Choose the right answer².

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| 1) Do children play volleyball in summer? | Yes, they do./No, they don't. |
| 2) Does it often rain in autumn? | Yes, it does./No, it doesn't. |
| 3) Do children often ride horses in towns and cities? | Yes, they do./No, they don't. |
| 4) Do you have pets at home? | Yes, I do./No, I don't. |
| 5) Do you have holidays in summer? | Yes, we do./No, we don't. |
| 6) Does your father work on Sunday? | Yes, he does./No, he doesn't. |
| 7) Does your mother work on Sunday? | Yes, she does./No, she doesn't. |

MEMO

Вы уже знаете, как построить вопросы в настоящем простом времени (present simple) и как кратко ответить на них. Если речь идёт о прошлом, в вопросах и ответах вместо вспомогательного глагола

do/does употребляется **did**, 🗣️ (12).

- Did the children play volleyball yesterday? — Yes, they did.
- Did they travel a lot last winter? — No, they didn't.
- Did he sleep well last night? — Yes, he did.
- Did he swim in the sea last summer? — No, he didn't.
- Did he go to the shops yesterday? — Yes, he did.



¹ Match the words. — Соедините слова.

² Choose the right answer [ɑ:nʒə] — Выберите правильный ответ.

4. Listen, (13). Look at the pictures and answer the questions¹.

Example: Did Liz go to the sea? — No, she didn't.



Did Liz get up early? — Yes, she did.



LAST WEEKEND

1) Did Liz have coffee for breakfast?



2) Did Liz ride a bike with her friends?



3) Did Liz play tennis in the park?



4) Did Liz have dinner at home?



5) Did Liz watch television?



6) Did Liz visit her grandmother?



¹ Answer the questions ['kwɛstʃənz] — Ответьте на вопросы.

7) Did Liz go to the shops?



8) Did Liz meet her friend Harry?



9) Did Liz cook supper?



10) Did Liz go to a party in the evening?



5. Ask questions about Ann and Peter. What did they do last week? Then answer the questions.

- Example: 1) Did Ann swim in the sea? — Yes, she did.
2) Did Ann and Peter go to the swimming pool?
— No, they didn't.
3) Did Peter ride his bike? — Yes, he did.


LAST WEEK

	Ann		Ann and Peter		Peter	
1	swim in the sea	+	go to the swimming pool	-	ride his bike	+
2	go to school	-	play on the beach	+	go to the skating rink	-
3	travel in France	+	stay at home	-	play football	+

	Ann		Ann and Peter		Peter	
4	speak English	-	have fun	+	go to the café	-
5	play on the beach	+	do lessons	-	watch television	+
6	go to the zoo	-	write letters	+	go to bed early	-
7	go on a trip	+	do Moscow	-	meet his friends	+
8	write a diary	+	drive cars	-	do his room	-

6. Answer the questions about last Sunday.

- 1) Did you go on a trip? 6) Did you help your parents?
 2) Did you go to school? 7) Did you go to the shops?
 3) Did you make sandcastles? 8) Did you do your room?
 4) Did you stay at a hotel? 9) Did you write in your diary?
 5) Did you meet your friends? 10) Did you have fun?

7. A. Listen to the text,  (14). Did Peter have good holidays last summer?

PETER'S HOLIDAYS

BEN. Did you stay in the city in summer, Peter?

PETER. No, I didn't. I went abroad for my holidays.

BEN. Abroad? Did you go to Spain?

PETER. No, I didn't. I went to Italy, to Rome.

BEN. Did you stay in a hotel?

PETER. Yes, I did. The hotel was very good. My room was comfortable and the food was wonderful.

BEN. Did you travel in Italy?

PETER. Yes, I did. I visited some very nice places.

BEN. Was the weather good?

PETER. The weather was sunny and hot. I can say I enjoyed my Italian holidays.

B. Act out the dialogue.

C. Work in pairs¹ and speak about your summer holidays.

¹ Work in pairs [peəz] — Поработайте в парах.

8. Listen to the text, (15). Say how to make up negative sentences¹ in past simple.



	Present Simple		Past Simple
1	Children do not (don't) go to school in July in Russia.	1	Last July the children <u>did not</u> (didn't) <u>go</u> to school.
2	Alice does not (doesn't) swim in the swimming pool on Sunday.	2	Last Sunday Alice <u>did not</u> (didn't) <u>swim</u> in the swimming pool.
3	John does not (doesn't) live on the farm in winter.	3	Last winter John <u>did not</u> (didn't) <u>live</u> on the farm.
4	Jane does not (doesn't) make tea for breakfast.	4	Jane <u>did not</u> (didn't) <u>make</u> tea for breakfast yesterday.
5	Little Bobby does not (doesn't) go to the shops.	5	Little Bobby <u>did not</u> (didn't) <u>go</u> to the shops.
6	Old James does not (doesn't) write a diary.	6	Yesterday old James <u>did not</u> (didn't) <u>write</u> in his diary.
7	Lizzy does not (doesn't) take her dog out on Sunday. Her sister does.	7	Lizzy <u>did not</u> (didn't) <u>take</u> her dog out on Sunday. Her sister did.
8	The Taylors do not (don't) drive their car in winter.	8	The Taylors <u>did not</u> (didn't) <u>drive</u> their car last winter.

9. Say what you didn't do yesterday.

Example: I didn't teach little children to swim yesterday.

teach little children to swim	read French books
play on the beach	visit Trafalgar Square
go on a trip to the sea	go to the British Museum
do London	go boating
stay at a hotel	stay at home all day
make sandcastles	swim in the sea

¹ to make up negative sentences — составлять отрицательные предложения

Если в разговоре ты не расслышал собеседника или не понял чего-либо, ты можешь переспросить его с помощью этих фраз:

Can you say it again, please? Pardon (me)? Sorry, what did you say? Who...? When...? How many...? Where...? Why...? What colour...? How old...?

10. Work in pairs. Ask your partner to say something again.

Example: — I didn't go to school yesterday.
 — Sorry, what did you say?
 — I didn't go to school yesterday.

Do It on Your Own

11. Complete the sentences.

1) I (did/do/does) not usually go to bed late last winter. 2) Last summer my brother (did/do/does) not go to Italy. 3) My little sister (did/do/does) not like porridge. She likes cornflakes. 4) We (did/do/does) not write a dictation last Thursday. 5) They (did/do/does) not go to school, they are very young. 6) The boys (did/do/does) not go fishing yesterday.

12. Look at the pictures and write what the children did yesterday.

Example: The children swam in the sea yesterday.



1. swim in the sea



2. make sandcastles



3. go boating



4. play on the beach



5. ride their bikes



6. teach Billy to play football

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
11	6	
12	6	

Step Four

Do It Together

1. Listen, (16), and say what the boys' names are.



1. He's _____



2. He's _____

2. Say what you did and what you didn't do last summer.

Example: I played football last summer.

I didn't go to the skating rink last summer.

get up early

go to school

watch television a lot

stay at home a lot

go to the sea

eat a lot of ice cream

play volleyball

go to the country

go to bed late

stay in the sun

drink a lot of Coke

ride a bike

work in the garden

play tennis

go on a trip with my parents

go to museums

walk in the park

swim in the swimming pool

3. A. Speak about the weather last week.

Example: On Sunday it rained. It was cold and windy.
On Monday it didn't rain. It was warm.



Sunday



Monday



Tuesday



Wednesday



Thursday



Friday



Saturday

B. Say what weather you had last week.

4. Read the text and answer the questions about Kate's holidays.

KATE'S SUMMER HOLIDAYS

SALLY. Hi, Kate. It's good to see you again.

KATE. Hi! It's good to see you.

SALLY. Where did you go for your holidays?

KATE. Oh, I had a lot of fun last summer. My parents and I went on a wonderful trip to France and stayed at a hotel near the sea.

SALLY. What was the hotel like?

KATE. It was a big modern hotel with a swimming pool. We had a cosy room and I could see the sea from my window! And the food in the hotel was very good.

SALLY. That's wonderful! Did you stay in the sun a lot? You are very brown.

- KATE.** I did. There was a beautiful beach near the hotel. And I swam in the sea too. The weather was sunny and hot and it never rained. And what about you? What did you do?
- SALLY.** I didn't go abroad last summer. My family and I went to Scotland in July and stayed in London in August. We had a boy and a girl from Russia, who stayed with us.
- KATE.** Russian children? How interesting! Who are they? Are they your friends? I'd like to know all about them.

- 1) What was the trip like?
- 2) What was the hotel like?
- 3) What was the hotel room like?
- 4) What was the hotel food like?
- 5) What was the beach like?
- 6) What was the weather like?
- 7) What were Kate's holidays like?

5. Listen to the song and then sing along¹, 🎧 (17).



WHAT CAN I DO TODAY?

What can I do today?
 Can you help me?
 Can you say?
 Why don't you read a book?
 I read it yesterday.
 Why don't you write a song?
 I wrote it yesterday.
 Why don't you ride your bike?
 I rode it yesterday.
 Why don't you watch TV?
 I watched it yesterday.
 Why don't you drink your Coke?
 I drank it yesterday.
 Why don't you swim, my boy?
 Oh, I swam yesterday.
 What can I do today?
 Can you help me?
 Can you say?

¹ sing along [ə'loŋ] — пойте вместе, подпевайте

6. Read the words.

mouse — south well — west eat — east port — north

7. Learn how to pronounce and use the new words, (18).

A.

north [nɔ:θ] — север

south [sauθ] — юг

east [i:st] — восток

west [west] — запад

famous ['feiməs] — известный

mountain ['mauntən] — гора

river ['rɪvə] — река

forest ['fɒrɪst] — лес

people ['pi:pəl] — люди

resort [rɪ'zɔ:t] — курорт

be situated ['sɪtʃuətɪd] —

располагаться

B.

north: in the north, in the north of England. Murmansk is in the north of our country. North America, North France, North England, the North Sea, the North Pole.

south: in the south, in the south of Russia, in the south of Moscow. Is Florida in the south of the USA? South Africa, South America, the South Pole.

east: in the east, in the southeast, in the northeast. I live in the northeast of Moscow.

west: in the west, in the northwest, in the southwest. Is St Petersburg in the northwest of Russia?

famous: a famous city, a famous song, a famous film, a famous film star.

be famous for: St Petersburg is famous for its museums. Moscow is famous for its theatres. What are they famous for? He is famous for his books, she is famous for her pictures.

mountain: a high mountain, in the mountains, the Ural Mountains (the Urals). I spent my holidays in the Alps and had a wonderful time there. The Andes ['ændi:z] are in South America.

river: a long river, a short river, the Volga River. The Thames [temz] is a river. There are a lot of small rivers in the northwest of Russia.

forest: a big forest, in the forest. Bears and foxes live in the forests. Kangaroos do not live in the forests. There is a forest near my country house.

people: good people, nice people, terrible people, people of Russia, people of Britain, all the people. There are a lot of people in the square.

resort: a wonderful resort, a summer resort. Blackpool is a famous resort in England. Do you know any summer resorts in Russia?

be situated: is situated, are situated. Where is Paris situated? It is situated on the Seine [sem].



8. Look at the maps and say where the cities are situated.

Example: London is situated in the southeast of Great Britain.

Arkhangelsk is situated in the north of Russia.

A. Great Britain



B. Russia



9. What are they?

Example: Omsk is a city. The Appalachians are mountains.

the Volga	the Caspian ['kæspɪən]
Everest ['evərəst]	the Ob [əʊb] and the Angara [ˌɑːngə'ɾɑː]
India ['ɪndɪə]	Holland ['hɒlənd]
the Baikal [baɪ'kɑːl]	the Alps [ælpz]
Paris ['pæris]	the Seine [seɪn]
the Thames [temz]	Volgograd ['vɒlgəgrɑːd]
the Urals ['jʊərəlz]	Italy ['ɪtali] and Spain [speɪn]
the Moskva [mɔːs'kvɑː]	Scotland ['skɒtlənd]
Ben Nevis [ben 'neɪvɪs]	Leeds [liːdz] and Oxford ['ɒksfəd]
the Andes ['ændiːz]	the Ontario [ɒn'tɔəriəʊ] and the Huron ['hjuərən]

10. What are they famous for? Check, (19), and repeat.

1) London	is famous for	the Bolshoi Theatre
2) Paris		films and film stars
3) Moscow		coffee
4) Italy		the Summer Gardens
5) Hollywood		tulips
6) Holland		resorts
7) The north of Africa		tea
8) South America		pizza
9) China		the Pyramids ['pɪrəˌmɪdz]
10) The south of France		the Eiffel Tower [ˌaɪfəl 'taʊə]
11) St Petersburg		Big Ben

Do It on Your Own**11. Answer the questions about last Saturday and last Sunday.**

cloudy, muddy, terrible, sad, nasty, cold, strong, beautiful,
happy, weak, blue, dry, wonderful, warm

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 1) What was the weather like? | 5) What was the sea (river/
lake) like? |
| 2) What were the streets like? | 6) What was the day like? |
| 3) What was the sky like? | 7) What were the people like? |
| 4) What was the wind like? | |



12. Where are they situated?

Example: Hollywood is situated in the USA.

- | | | |
|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1) Hollywood? | 4) the Andes? | 7) the Thames? |
| 2) The Volga? | 5) Rome? | 8) the Angara? |
| 3) Murmansk? | 6) the Urals? | 9) Brighton? |

13. Check yourself.

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
11	7	
12	8	

Step Five

Do It Together

1. Where was Yura in Great Britain? 🌐 (20).

- in the north?
- in the northwest?
- in the south?
- in the northeast?
- in the west?
- in the southwest?
- in the east?
- in the southeast?



2. Look at the pictures. Where were the people yesterday?



1.



2.



3.



4.



5.

3. What do you think?

Example: Fishing is wonderful.

Swimming in the sea Skiing in the mountains Travelling on foot Walking in the forest Doing a museum Boating Going to the shops Seeing new places Making pictures Making new friends Travelling by air Staying at a hotel Visiting old castles Going abroad	is/isn't	wonderful terrible nice pleasant ¹ interesting very good boring ²
---	----------	---

¹ pleasant [pleznt] — приятный

² boring [ˈbɔ:ɪŋ] — скучный

4. Do you know Russian towns well? Match the places with their names and their descriptions¹.



Vladivostok, Tiksi, St Petersburg, Astrakhan,
Sochi, Vladimir, Yaroslavl

- 1) It is a big city in the northwest of Russia. It is situated on the Neva River. It's a very beautiful place famous for its museums and parks.
- 2) It's a town at the Black Sea. It's very green and nice. There are a lot of hotels there. People come to this place for holidays. It's a famous resort.
- 3) It is a town on the Volga River near the Caspian Sea. It is famous for fishing. The place is very hot in summer.
- 4) It's a town near the Lena River at the Laptev Sea. It's a port but ships don't come to this port in winter. They come in July, August and September. The weather in winter is very cold and there is ice on the sea and on the river.
- 5) It is a very old town on the Klazma River. This town is about 900 years old. It is famous for its history².

¹ **description** [dɪ'skrɪpʃən] — описание

² **history** ['hɪstəri] — история

- 6) It's a big port in the east of Russia. People who live there do a lot of fishing and make ships.
- 7) It is a port on the Volga River and a very old and beautiful place. It's about 900 years old. The place is famous for its history and for a very old theatre situated in it.

МЕМО

АРТИКЛЬ И ГЕОГРАФИЧЕСКИЕ НАЗВАНИЯ

I. Определённый артикль *the* употребляется с именами существительными, обозначающими:

горы (горные цепи или массивы): *the Urals, the Alps, the Andes;*

моря: *the Black Sea, the North Sea;*

реки: *the Thames, the Volga, the Mississippi River;*

озера: *the Baikal, the Sevan, the Seliger, the Ontario.*

Однако, если перед названием озера стоит само слово *lake*, артикль отсутствует:

Lake Baikal.

II. Без артикля употребляются названия:

континентов: *Africa, America, North America, South America;*

стран: *Russia, England, Spain, Italy;*

городов: *Paris, London, Rome, Moscow, St Petersburg;*

площадей: *Red Square, Trafalgar Square;*

улиц: *Tverskaya Street, Oxford Street, Fleet Street;*

парков: *Hyde Park, Central Park;*

горных пиков: *Everest, Ben Nevis.*

5. Article *the* or no article?

- 1) ... Black Sea
- 2) ... Urals
- 3) ... Volga
- 4) ... Alps
- 5) ... Andes
- 6) ... Thames
- 7) ... Brighton
- 8) ... London

- 9) ... North America
- 10) ... Trafalgar Square
- 11) ... Baikal
- 12) ... Lake Baikal
- 13) ... Ben Nevis
- 14) ... Red Square
- 15) ... Ontario



Специальные вопросы в прошедшем простом времени (past simple) строятся почти так же, как и в настоящем (present simple), только в прошедшем времени после вопросительных слов **how, what, when, where, why, who** используется вспомогательный глагол **did**.

What did you see? — We saw an old film.
 When did you write the letter? — I wrote it yesterday.
 Where did he play? — He played on the beach.
 Why did she go to Hollywood? — She wanted to meet famous people there.
 Who did they meet? — They met their friends.
 How did he travel? — He travelled by car.

В вопросах к подлежащему вспомогательный глагол не ставится.

Who saw an old film? — We did.
 Who wrote the letter yesterday? — I did.
 Who travelled in France? — He did.
 Who wanted to meet famous people? — She did.

6. What word is missing?¹

1	... did Peter go for his holidays?	— He went to France.
2	... did he travel?	— He travelled by train.
3	... did he visit his friends?	— In August.
4	... did he go abroad?	— He wanted to see his friends.
5	... did he see in Paris?	— He saw the Eiffel Tower.
6	... did he come back home?	— He came back in September.
7	... did he stay in September?	— He stayed at a hotel.
8	At ... hotel did he stay?	— It was the Old Ship hotel.
9	... days did he stay there?	— Ten days.
10	... was Peter happy?	— He had very good holidays.

¹ What word is missing? — Какого слова не хватает?

7. What was your trip like? Answer the questions.



- 1) When did you travel?
- 2) Where did you go?
- 3) How did you travel: by car, by sea, by plane, by train?
- 4) Who travelled with you?
- 5) Why did you go to that place?
- 6) What did you see there?
- 7) Who did you meet there?
- 8) What was the place like?
- 9) Did you enjoy your trip?
- 10) Would you like to go there again?

8. Listen, (21), read the text and say why people travel.



WHERE AND WHY PEOPLE TRAVEL

These days people travel a lot. They travel at home and abroad. They want to see new places and to meet new people. Sometimes they travel on business¹, but often they go to places for holidays. In summer a lot of people like to go to the sea or stay at the lake or near the river. There they can enjoy swimming, boating and fishing and stay in the sun. In winter people sometimes go to the mountains to ski². It is always nice to be in the forest. Forests, lakes, seas and mountains are very beautiful places. People often make pictures of the places they visit and show them to their friends. When people go abroad, they usually visit interesting places, castles, old towns, and museums.

People travel by plane, by train, by car or by sea. Travelling can be very pleasant or not very pleasant, but it is usually interesting.

¹ on business ['biznəs] — по делам

² to ski [ski:] — кататься на лыжах

9. Say where, when and how people usually travel these days.

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Many people like to travel abroad.
Why is it good to travel in your country?

Do It on Your Own

10. John and Sally were in Scotland last spring. What was their trip like? Ask them 7 questions. Begin with *When, What, Why, How, Who, With whom, Where*.

Example: Where did you stay in Scotland?

11. Article *the* or no article?

1) ... Mississippi is a long river. ... Thames is not. 2) ... Bolshoi Theatre is situated in Moscow. 3) ... Russia is a country, ... USA is a country too. 4) Last summer my friends were in ... England, the weather was warm and they swam in ... North Sea. 5) Where are ... Andes situated? 6) Paris is on ... Seine. 7) ... Everest is a very high mountain. 8) ... Huron is a lake, ... Ontario is a lake too. 9) ... Oxford is an English city.

12. Check yourself.

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
10	7	
11	13	



Step One

Do It Together

1. In August Yura and his sister Lena went abroad. What did Yura say about his summer holidays? 🎧 (22).

1) Did you go to England last summer, Yura?

- a) Yes, I did.
- b) No, I didn't.

2) Did you enjoy your trip?

- a) Very much.
- b) Not much.

3) Was the weather good?

- a) It rained a lot.
- b) It didn't rain at all.

4) Did you see many places in England?

- a) Two or three cities.
- b) Three or four cities.

5) Did you stay in a hotel?

- a) We stayed with our cousins.
- b) We stayed with our friends.

6) Where do they live in England?

- a) They live in Glasgow.
- b) They live in London.

7) What is London like?

- a) Oh, it's very big and interesting.
- b) Oh, it's very interesting.

8) Did you take any pictures¹?

- a) A lot. Would you like to look at them?
- b) A lot. Would you like to see them?

¹ to take pictures ['pɪktʃəz] — делать фотографии



9) Yes, thank you! What's in this picture?

- a) It's Trafalgar Square and a red bus in it.
- b) It's Trafalgar Square and some people in it.

10) And who is this?

- a) It's my friend's mother.
- b) It's my friend's father.

2. What was Nick going to do on holidays?

Example: Nick was going to do museums.



MEMO

Если нужно предложить кому-то сделать что-то вместе, часто используется оборот **let's (let us) do** (давайте сделаем).

Let's go there. — Давай(те) пойдём туда.

Обратите внимание на то, что после *let's* инфинитив глагола употребляется без частицы *to*.

Let's feed Rex. — Давай накормим Рекса.

Отрицательные предложения с *let's* могут образовываться без вспомогательного глагола *do*.

Let's not go there. — Давайте не пойдём туда.

Глагол *let* употребляется со вспомогательным глаголом *do*.

Don't let us go there. — Не разрешайте/не давайте нам идти туда.

3. Alice has a lot of ideas. What are they?

Example: Let's have a party. Let's not fly.



4. Match the sentences.

- | | |
|---|------------------------------------|
| 1) There's a good film on television today. | a) Let's drink some mineral water. |
| 2) It's raining again! | b) Let's send him a letter. |
| 3) That's very nice music. | c) Let's speak English. |
| 4) Look, I'm very hungry. | d) Let's stay at home. |
| 5) It's a very hot day today. | e) Let's go to the shop. |
| 6) He doesn't have a telephone. | f) Let's go to bed early. |
| 7) Here's my new football. | g) Let's watch it. |
| 8) I'm thirsty. | h) Let's dance. |
| 9) I can't wash all these plates. | i) Let's play a game. |
| 10) I'm tired. | j) Let's make some sandwiches. |
| 11) I don't speak Russian. | k) Let's go to the beach. |
| 12) We have no food in the house. | l) Let's do it together. |

5. Complete the dialogues. Act them out.

Example: — ... go to the shop. I'd like some cakes for tea.
Yes, I'd like some ice cream and sweets too.
Let's go to the shop. I'd like some cakes for tea.
Yes, let's go. I'd like some ice cream and sweets too.
(— No, let's not. I'm tired.)

- 1) — ... to the beach. The weather is wonderful.
— Yes, I'd like to
- 2) — ... to the cinema. I'd like to see the new film.
— No, The film is not very interesting.
- 3) — ... to the museum. I'd like to see the old coins.
— Yes, They say the coins come from Greece and Rome.
- 4) — ... to the zoo. I'd like
— No, I don't like zoos.
- 5) — ... to the park. ... a game of tennis.
— No, I'm tired.
- 6) — ... to the café. I'd like
— Yes, I'm hungry too.

MEMO

have got/has got

В Великобритании (в отличие от США) очень часто вместо глагола **have/has** употребляется оборот **have got/has got**.

I have got a car. = I have a car. (У меня есть машина.)

They haven't got a car. = They don't have a car. (У них нет машины.)

Nick has got a bike. = Nick has a bike. (У Ника есть велосипед.)

Jane hasn't got a bike. = Jane doesn't have a bike. (У Джейн нет велосипеда.)

6. Listen and repeat, 🎧 (23).

I have got = I've got

We have got = We've got

You have got = You've got

They have got = They've got

He has got = He's got

She has got = She's got

It has got = It's got

My mother has got = My mother's got

Mary has got = Mary's got



7. What do they have and what don't they have? Use *have got* (*haven't got*), *has got* (*hasn't got*).

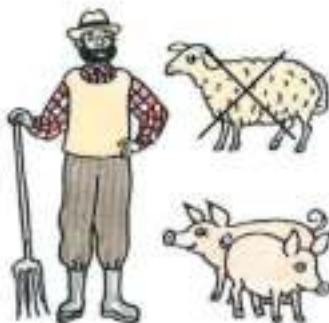
Example: Pussy has got two balls.
It hasn't got toy mice.



1. Pussy



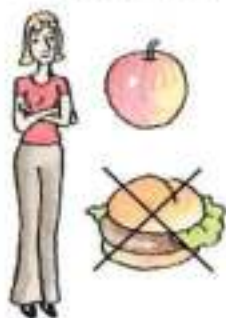
2. Mr Clark



3. Mr Barton



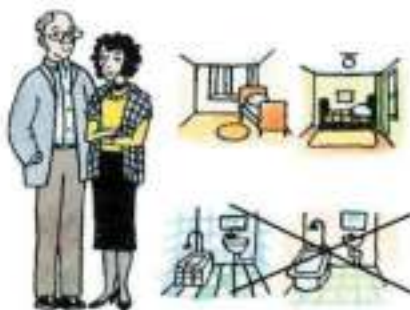
4. John



5. Alice



6. Helen



7. the Jacksons



8. Mrs Jones



9. Bobby



10. Ruth and Rosie

have got/has got

I. В вопросительной форме оборот *have got/has got* употребляется следующим образом, (24).

Have you got a pen?	Yes, I have. No, I haven't.
Have they got a house?	Yes, they have. No, they haven't.
Has he got a computer?	Yes, he has. No, he hasn't.
Has Jane got a mobile ¹ ?	Yes, she has. No, she hasn't.

II. В прошедшем простом времени оборот *have got* употребляется редко. Обычно используются формы *had, didn't have, did... have...* (25).

I had a birthday party last week.
We didn't have a car and couldn't go to the beach.
Did you have nice teachers last year?
Yes, we did.

8. A. What has your friend got? Ask your questions.

Example: Have you got a bike? — No, I haven't.



¹ a mobile ['məʊbaɪl] — мобильный телефон

B. Work in pairs and make short dialogues as in the example.

Example: Have you got a bike?
— A bike? No, I haven't.

9. King John is rich. King James is rich too. Complete their talk.



boats, castles, horses,
cars, planes,
computers, mobiles,
bikes, airports,
hotels, garages

KING JOHN. I've got fifteen cities. How many cities have you got?

KING JAMES. I've got twenty and I've got forty ships. How many ships have you got?

KING JOHN. ... and ...

10. A. What did they have in the Middle Ages?

Example: Did they have tape recorders? — No, they didn't.
Did they have ships? — Yes, they did.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1) Did they have televisions? | 9) Did they have computers? |
| 2) Did they have big castles? | 10) Did they have schools? |
| 3) Did they have gardens? | 11) Did they have teachers? |
| 4) Did they have books? | 12) Did they have doctors? |
| 5) Did they have clocks? | 13) Did they have planes? |
| 6) Did they have cars? | 14) Did they have mobiles? |
| 7) Did they have lamps? | 15) Did they have theatres? |
| 8) Did they have boats? | |

B. Say what they had and didn't have in the Middle Ages.

Example: They had big castles.
They didn't have televisions.

Do It on Your Own

11. Complete the sentences with *have got* or *has got*.

1) We ... seven apple trees near our country house. 2) Bess ... two armchairs in her sitting room. 3) Their new house ... three

bathrooms. 4) The Browns ... four bedrooms in their house. 5) My parents ... three daughters. 6) My cousin Polly ... four cats in her flat. 7) I ... two fridges in the house. 8) Pete ... three hamburgers on his plate. 9) I know you ... a very good sweet shop near your house. 10) The school ... a large gym.

12. What haven't you got but would like to have? Write ten sentences.

Example: I haven't got a mobile. I would like to have a mobile.

13. Check yourself.

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
11	10	
12	10	

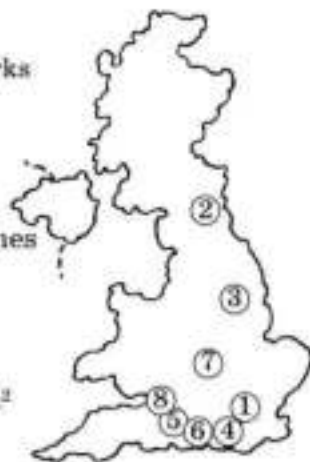
Step Two

Do It Together

1. A. What have these cities got? Check,  (26).

Example: London has got some¹ beautiful parks and gardens.

- | | |
|------------------------|---|
| 1) London | a) some beautiful parks and gardens |
| 2) Newcastle-upon-Tyne | b) some very old houses |
| 3) York | c) some very famous beaches |
| 4) Wimbledon | d) a famous theatre |
| 5) Bath | e) a lot of interesting museums |
| 6) Brighton | f) an old port |
| 7) Stratford-on-Avon | g) very good tennis courts ² |
| 8) Bristol | h) an old castle |



B. What are these places famous for?

Example: London is famous for beautiful parks and gardens.

¹ some [sʌm] — некоторое количество, несколько

² a court [kɔ:t] — корт

2. Complete the sentences.

- 1) The weather is sunny and hot. Let's
- 2) The music is beautiful. Let's
- 3) The film is boring. Let's not
- 4) The book is very interesting. Let's
- 5) The day is cold and rainy. Let's not
- 6) There are a lot of dirty plates in the kitchen. Let's
- 7) I don't speak French. Let's
- 8) I'm very hungry. Let's
- 9) It's Mike's birthday today. Let's
- 10) This place is a famous resort. Let's

MEMO

В английском языке есть разные слова, чтобы сообщить о количестве, 🗣️ (27).

много — *a lot (of), many, much*

мало — *little, few*

немного (некоторое количество) — *a little, a few, some (any)*

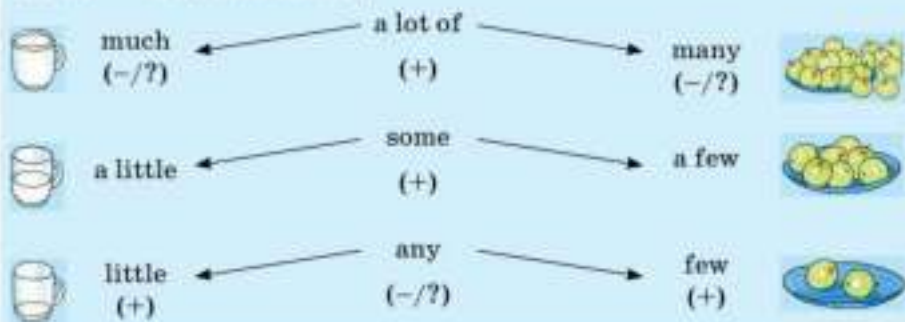
+ I've got a lot of friends, and John has few.

- They haven't got many boys in the class.

? Have you got much food in the fridge?

?/± Have you got any apples?
 Yes, we have some.
 No, we haven't any.

Обратите внимание, что выбор того или иного слова зависит от того, является ли предложение вопросом, отрицанием или утверждением, а также от того, является ли сочетающееся с этими словами существительное исчисляемым или неисчисляемым. (Например: *street, house, girl* — исчисляемые; *water, milk, coffee* — неисчисляемые.)



3. Listen to the text, (28), and repeat.



(+)

I've got a lot of books.
Mrs Johnson has got a lot of grandchildren.
We have got a lot of juice in the fridge.
The cook has got a lot of milk.
There is a lot of coffee in the cup.
There were a lot of apples on the dish.

(-)

I haven't got many pencils.
Jack hasn't got many books.
We haven't got much milk.
Jane hasn't got much tea in her cup.
There is not much bread on the plate.
There are not many tulips in the garden.

(?)

Have we got much time? — Yes, we have. We've got a lot of time.
Has Jim got much time? — Oh, no, he hasn't. His classes begin at nine.
Have you got many friends? — Oh, yes. I've got a lot.
Has Jemma got many friends? — No, she hasn't. She's got few.
Are there many beaches in the south of England? — Yes, there are.
A lot of them are very good.
Is there much juice in the fridge? — Yes, there is. Drink some.

4. Look at the picture. Listen to the questions, (29), and answer them.
Use¹ *some, a few, a lot*.



Example: Has Bob got any toy ships? — Yes, he has some/a few.



¹ Use [ju:z]... — Используйте...



- 1) Has Jane Grimes got any cats?
- 2) Has Bob got any cars?
- 3) Has Jane got any birds?
- 4) Have the Smiths got any trees in their garden?
- 5) Have the Smiths got any roses in their garden?
- 6) Has Bob got any pencils?
- 7) Has Jane got any dogs?
- 8) Have the Smiths got any tulips?
- 9) Has Bob got any books?

5. How many... have you got? 🗣️ (30). Use *some, a few, few, a lot.*

Example: How many pictures have you got?

I have some (a few).

I have very few.

I have a lot.

I have no pictures.

- 1) How many pets have you got?
- 2) How many books have you got?
- 3) How many rooms have you got in your flat?
- 4) How many friends have you got?
- 5) How many computer games have you got?
- 6) How many pens have you got?
- 7) How many pencils have you got?
- 8) How many chairs have you got in your flat?

6. What has Mr Cook got in his fridge? 🗣️ (31).

Example: — Has Mr Cook got much Coke in his fridge?

— No, he hasn't. He has got little.

— Has Mr Cook got much juice in his fridge?

— Yes, he has. He has got a lot.

- 1) Has Mr Cook got much butter in his fridge?
- 2) Has Mr Cook got much juice in his fridge?
- 3) Has Mr Cook got much mineral water in his fridge?
- 4) Has Mr Cook got much cheese in his fridge?
- 5) Has Mr Cook got much milk in his fridge?
- 6) Has Mr Cook got much food in his fridge?



7. What's your dream house¹ like?

I'd like to have
a house with

a
some
a few
a lot of

garage.
garden.
flowers in the garden.
small fish pond.
fruit trees near it.
cosy rooms.
light bedrooms.
big kitchen.
beautiful pictures on the walls.
nice food in the fridge.
armchairs in the living room.
books in the bookcases.
computer(s).

8. Choose the right word and complete the text.

**THE STEWARTS VISIT
THE LAKE DISTRICT**

Last spring the Stewarts visited a small town in the northwest of England, in the Lake District. Old Mrs Stewart, Henry's mother, lives there. The place is very nice with (¹a lot of, much) forests and (²some, a little) low mountains. The town is clean and cosy with (³a lot of, much) green streets. There are (⁴a few, a little) shops there. The shops are usually small and very (⁵little, few) people work there. "Are there (⁶some, any) cinemas here, Dad?" Henry's daughter wanted to know. Her father said there were (⁷some,

¹ your dream house — дом твоей мечты

any) cinemas and there were (⁸some, any) theatres too. Old Mrs Stewart lives near the river. There's (⁹little, few) water in the river in summer, but there are (¹⁰a lot of, much) beautiful lakes with (¹¹a lot of, many) water in the forest. Old Mrs Stewart's house is not big. It's got only (¹²a few, a little) rooms in it. There are very (¹³few, little) big houses in the town. They are usually hotels. In June, July and August (¹⁴a lot of, much) people come here to spend their holidays in this wonderful place.

MEMO

В английском языке, помимо известного вам способа образования новых слов при помощи суффиксов (read + er = reader; rain + y = rainy; usual + ly = usually), существует возможность создать новое слово, не меняя его внешнюю форму.

I. N → Adj

chocolate → chocolate cake
apple → apple pie
orange → orange juice
summer → summer holidays

II. N → V

work → to work
place → to place
plant → to plant
water → to water

9. Say the same¹ in Russian.

A.

Example: Can you cook fish? (Ты умеешь готовить рыбу?)

Where do you usually fish? (Где ты обычно рыбачишь?)

- 1) Would you like a little butter on your bread? Butter your bread, dear.
- 2) We had a nice party last Saturday. Today is Tom's birthday. Let's party!
- 3) Please say what you think. I want to have my say too.
- 4) I saw a very good show on television. Please show me your homework.
- 5) Was your visit to Scotland interesting? When are you going to visit Scotland?
- 6) Is it a long walk from here to the theatre? Would you like to go by bus or walk?
- 7) I usually take a warm shower in the evening. You shower me with presents.
- 8) Does it often rain here? We usually have a lot of rain in autumn.

¹ the same [семя] — то же самое

B.
Example: There's an old tower in our town.
(В нашем городе есть старая башня.)
Big Ben is a tower clock. (Биг Бен — башенные часы.)

- 1) Do you like bananas? Is this banana ice cream? I'd like some.
- 2) Moscow is a big city. Where is the city park?
- 3) Do you have any tomatoes and cucumbers? Do you like tomato-and-cucumber salad?
- 4) The Smirnovs are a big family. This is the Smirnovs' family tree.
- 5) There are some cosy benches in the garden. These are garden benches.
- 6) There's little ham and no cheese on the table. Would you like ham sandwiches or cheese sandwiches?
- 7) Where do you usually go for holidays? Blackpool is a holiday resort.
- 8) Is dad at home now? The home team won the game.

Do It on Your Own

10. Choose the right word.

1) Have you got (some/any) friends in your class? 2) There is not (much/many) snow this year. 3) Do you read (much/many) books? 4) I saw (some/any) very good pictures in this gallery. 5) (Few/A few) people know the names of all capitals in the world. 6) Are there (some/any) churches in your town? 7) I have very (little/a little) time today. 8) Kate has (some/any) very interesting English books. 9) I can speak French (little/a little). 10) We learn (many/a lot of) English words. 11) There are (few/little) restaurants in this town. 12) Are there (a lot/many) teachers in your school?

11. Make some new words. Use them in the sentences.

1) **N + er (write, paint, swim)**

- a) Joanne Rowling is a famous British ..., a lot of people read her Harry Potter books.
- b) Ilya Repin is a famous Russian ...
- c) Do you know any famous ...s? — Yes, Dmitry Popov is one of them.



2) **N + y (sand, wind, cloud)**

- a) There are a lot of ... beaches in the south of England.
- b) The weather is hot, but it is
- c) The sky is not blue. It is

3) **Adj + ly (warm, cold, usual)**

- a) Jane ... gets up early, but yesterday she got up late.
- b) Mr Frost came into the room and looked at us We understood that he was not a pleasant man.
- c) Our new teacher greeted us We liked him very much.

4) **N → Adj (tomato, fish, milk)**

- a) There is some ... juice on the table.
- b) My little cousin doesn't like ... soup.
- c) Johnny ate a lot of ... chocolate yesterday.

5) **N → V (place, water, plant)**

- a) I would like to ... the dishes on the table.
- b) Who usually ...s the flowers in your garden?
- c) My mother and I ...ed some apple trees yesterday.

12. Check yourself.

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
10	12	
11	15	

Step Three

Do It Together

1. Close is a very small place. Bill wants to go to Close, but he doesn't know much about it. Look at the picture (page 52) and help him.

- 1) Are there any mountains near Close?
- 2) Is there a river or a lake near Close?
- 3) Are there any forests near the place?



- 4) Are there many streets in Close?
- 5) Are there any squares?
- 6) Are there any shops? Any hotels?
- 7) Are there many schools in Close?
- 8) Are there many big houses in Close?
- 9) Are there any cinemas or theatres in Close?
- 10) Is there a park in Close?
- 11) Are there any airports near Close?
- 12) Are there any swimming pools?
- 13) Are there many people in Close?

2. A. Listen, (32). Which sentence did you hear?

- 1) a) There are few new houses in this street.
b) There are a few new houses in this street.
- 2) a) There is little juice on the table.
b) There is a little juice on the table.
- 3) a) I have little time this evening.
b) I have a little time this evening.
- 4) a) There are few good shops in this town.
b) There are a few good shops in this town.



- 5) a) There is little water in our river in summer.
 b) There is a little water in our river in summer.
- 6) a) Have you got little milk?
 b) Have you got a little milk?
- 7) a) The city has got few theatres.
 b) The city has got a few theatres.
- 8) a) Jack watches few films on television.
 b) Jack watches a few films on television.
- 9) a) We eat little bread.
 b) We eat a little bread.
- 10) a) I know few places at the sea.
 b) I know a few places at the sea.

B. Listen to the sentences again and ask your partner to repeat what you missed.

Example: — There are a few new houses in the street.
 — Did he say few or a few?
 — He said a few.

3. Learn how to pronounce and use the new words, (33).

A.

centre ['sentə] — центр
market ['mɑ:kɪt] — рынок
tour [tuə] — тур, поездка, экскурсия
souvenir [su:və'nɪə] — сувенир
tourist ['tuərɪst] — турист
restaurant ['restərɒnt] — ресторан

monument ['mɒnjumənt] —
 памятник
buy [baɪ] — покупать
world [wɜ:ld] — мир, все-
 ленная
church [tʃ:ʃ] — церковь

B.

centre: centres, in the centre of the table, the city centre, a shopping centre. Let's put the flowers in the centre of the table. Are there many shops in the city centre?

tour: a bus tour, a walking tour, a tour of the country, a tour of the museum, to make a tour. The Queen is making a tour of Canada. Let's make a tour of the Tower of London.

tourist: You can see a lot of tourists in Trafalgar Square.

monument: a monument to A. S. Pushkin, a monument to the queen. There were not any monuments in the square.

world: in the world, all over the world, the world of sport. There are many countries in the world. People all over the world know that Russia is a big country.

market: a small market, a fish market, a flower market, a street market. We saw beautiful flowers in the market.



supermarket ['su:pə:mɑ:kɪt]: We can buy food in supermarkets.

Are there many supermarkets in your city?

souvenir: a good souvenir, small souvenirs. He had a large map of London in his room as a souvenir of his holiday.

restaurant: a good restaurant, a cosy restaurant, to go to a restaurant. We don't often have dinner in a restaurant.

buy — bought [bɔ:t]: to buy food, to buy flowers, to buy books. We bought a lot of vegetables yesterday. Are you going to buy any milk, Alice? We've got very little milk at home.

church: a small church, an old church. There are no churches in the place where I live.

to go to church: On Sundays my granny always goes to church.

4. Answer the questions.

- 1) What souvenirs do you like to give to your friends?
- 2) Do you know any good restaurants in your town?
- 3) What colour are London buses?
- 4) What would you like to make: a tour of Moscow or a tour of St Petersburg?
- 5) What monuments do you know in your town?
- 6) Are supermarkets usually big or small?
- 7) Where do people usually buy vegetables and flowers?
- 8) Where do people go when they want to look at good pictures?
- 9) What is there in the centre of your town?
- 10) To what places do tourists usually go?
- 11) Would you like to go on a world tour?
- 12) What are you going to do tomorrow?



Downing Street — одна из боковых улиц, примыкающая к проспекту Whitehall. Адрес **10, Downing Street** известен во всём мире, так как здесь находится резиденция премьер-министра Соединённого Королевства Великобритании и Северной Ирландии.

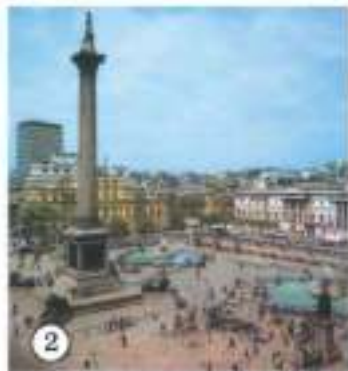
Double-decker (bus) — одна из достопримечательностей Лондона и один из его символов — красный двухэтажный автобус. Такие автобусы, особенно с открытым верхом, часто используют для экскурсий по городу.

Whitehall — широкий и шумный проспект в Лондоне, соединяющий Трафальгарскую и Вестминстерскую площади. Когда-то на этом проспекте находился королевский дворец, построенный из белого камня. Он-то и дал название проспекту. На этой улице располагаются многие правительственные учреждения, например министерство обороны, министерство иностранных дел, министерство финансов и Адмиралтейство.

5. These are four famous places in London. Listen, (34), and learn the new words.



1. The Houses of Parliament: the House of Lords and the House of Commons.
2. Trafalgar Square. The Monument to Admiral Nelson. The National Gallery.
3. Downing Street, 10 (The Prime Minister's house).
4. Whitehall. A double-decker bus.



6. Read this page from Yura's diary. What places did Yura see in London yesterday and what is he going to see on Sunday?

10 August

Hooray¹, I'm in London! The Barkers are very pleasant people. Yesterday we drove to the city centre. I saw the River Thames, the Houses of Parliament with Big Ben and Trafalgar Square. Mr Barker says that we are going to make a tour of the Houses of Parliament and listen to the debates² in the House of Lords or the House of Commons. I'd like to do that very much! Big Ben, the famous clock, doesn't look very big, but I know that its minute hand is as big as³ a double-decker bus. From the Houses of Parliament we walked up Whitehall (it's not a hall but a beautiful street). We turned to Downing Street to look at the house where the British Prime Minister lives at No. 10. In Trafalgar Square I saw the monument to Admiral Nelson, the National Gallery (it's a big world-famous picture gallery), a church (St Martin-in-the-Fields). Next to the church there was a street market where I bought some souvenirs for my family. After that we had dinner at a nice restaurant. The restaurant looked like an old ship. We had fish and chips and some pudding. It was fun. On Sunday John and I are going to visit the British Museum. I know I'm going to enjoy it.

7. What is it? Give it a name. Check, (35).

a restaurant, a monument, a picture gallery, a market,
a church, a museum, a double-decker, a supermarket,
a swimming pool, a bank, a cinema, a theatre, a school



1.



2.



3.



4.

¹ Hooray [ho'rei] — Ура!

² debates [di'beits] — дебаты, обсуждения

³ as big as... — величиной (размером) с...



5.



6.



7.



8.



9.



10.



11.



12.



13.

8. What can you say about them? (See Yura's diary.)

- 1) The Houses of Parliament
- 2) Big Ben
- 3) The House at Downing Street, 10
- 4) Trafalgar Square
- 5) a double-decker

MEMO

Если нужно сравнить два предмета, а их качества одинаковы/неодинаковы, англичане часто употребляют конструкции *as... as/not as... as*.

The brown table is *as big as* the yellow table. — Коричневый стол такой же большой, как и желтый.

Sunday was *not as cold as* Saturday. — Воскресенье не было таким холодным, как суббота.

9. Look at the pictures and compare¹ them. Check, (36).

Example: The house is as big as the cinema.
The house is not as big as the cinema.



1. big



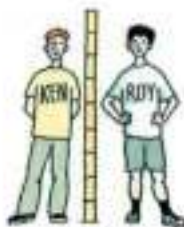
2. big



3. beautiful



4. beautiful



5. tall



6. tall



7. long

8. long



Charles



Don

9. old



Charles



Peter

10. old



11. strong



12. strong

Do It on Your Own

10. Complete the sentences. Use the new words.

centre, monuments, tour, world, tourists, market,
supermarkets, souvenirs, church, restaurant

1) There are a lot of ... to Russian writers in Moscow. 2) Where do you usually buy ...? 3) Is Red Square in the ... of Moscow? 4) We haven't got any ... in our street, but there is a small shop there. 5) Yesterday I had dinner in the 6) A lot of people buy fruit and vegetables in the ..., they don't usually buy them in the shops.

¹ to compare [kəm'peɪ] — сравнивать, сравнить

- 7) My grandparents always go to ... on Sundays. 8) Last summer we had an interesting ... of the northwest of Russia. 9) People from all over the ... come to Russia to do its cities and other places. 10) In summer there are a lot of ... in all big cities of our country.

11. Compare these.

Example: The grey cat is as small as the white cat. The red dog is not as big as the black dog.

1) the grey cat the white cat	small	=
2) the red dog the black dog	big	?
3) the chair the bench	high	-
4) the girl the boy	tall	-
5) the green tree the brown tree	tall	?
6) the sitting room the bedroom	cosy	?
7) the kitchen the hall	clean	-
8) the garden the forest	green	-

12. Check yourself.

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
10	10	
11	8	

Step Four

Do It Together

1. What did Yura buy for his family and friends in London? 🎧 (37).

- 1) Yura bought a beautiful ... for his father.
- 2) He bought a ... for his mother.
- 3) He bought some new ... for his cousin Dima.



- 4) Yura bought a new ... for his cousin Sergei.
 5) He bought a fine ... for his grandfather.
 6) He bought a nice ... for his friend Alexander.
 7) He bought some very good ... for his friend Denis.

2. Compare them. Check, (38).



Example: 1) The National Gallery in London (1838) The Tretyakov Gallery in Moscow (1856) The National Gallery in London is nearly ¹ as old as the Tretyakov Gallery in Moscow.	old
2) The Thames (334 km) The Moskva River (473 km) The Thames is not as long as the Moskva River.	long
1) Moscow (\approx 9 mln. people) London (\approx 8 mln. people)	big
2) Moscow (1147 A.D.) London (\approx I century B.C.)	old
3) Russia (\approx 17,075,400 km ²) Great Britain (\approx 244,088 km ²)	small
4) France (543,965 km ²) Spain (504,782 km ²)	big
5) Vatican City (0.4 km ²) Monaco (2 km ²)	small
6) Mount Everest (8,848 m) Mount Elbrus (5,642 m)	high
7) The Bolshoi Theatre in Moscow (1776) The Covent Garden Opera House in London (1732)	old
8) The Wall Tower in New York (290 m) The Eiffel Tower in Paris (300 m)	high
9) January in Moscow (\approx -10,8 C) December in Moscow (\approx -7,5 C)	cold
10) June in Moscow (\approx +16 °C) July in Moscow (\approx +18,3 °C)	warm





¹ nearly [nɪəli] — почти

² A.D. [eɪ'di:] (Anno Domini) [ˌæno ˈdɒmɪni] — нашей эры

³ I century [ˈsentʃəri] B.C. [ˌbiːsi:] (Before Christ) [ˈkrɪst] — первый век до Рождества Христова (до нашей эры)

3. Look at the pictures, listen, (39), and repeat.



<p>I.</p>  <p>1) The red book is not as thick as the green book. 2) The green book is <u>thicker</u>. 3) The red book is <u>thinner</u>. 4) The brown book is the <u>thickest</u>.</p>	<p>II.</p>  <p>John Andrew Bryan</p> <p>1) John is not as tall as Andrew. 2) Andrew is <u>taller</u>. 3) John is <u>shorter</u>. 4) Bryan is the <u>tallest</u> of them.</p>
<p>III.</p>  <p>Alice Jane Kate</p> <p>1) Jane is not as young as Alice. 2) Alice is <u>younger</u> than Jane. 3) Jane is <u>older</u> than¹ Alice. 4) Kate is the <u>oldest</u> of them.</p>	<p>IV.</p>  <p>Steve Jack Oliver</p> <p>1) Jack is not as strong as Steve. 2) Steve is <u>stronger</u> than Jack. 3) Jack is <u>weaker</u> than Steve. 4) Oliver is the <u>strongest</u> of them.</p>

MEMO

Сравнивать предметы можно, употребляя прилагательные в сравнительной и превосходной степени. Если в слове один слог или два слога, которые заканчиваются на -y, -ow, -er, то степени сравнения образуются при помощи суффиксов -er, -est, (40). С прилагательными в превосходной степени используется артикль **the**.

- small — smaller — (the) smallest
- cold — colder — (the) coldest
- narrow — narrower — (the) narrowest
- clever² — cleverer — (the) cleverest

¹ than [ðæn] — чем

² clever ['klevə] — умный



Обратите внимание на изменения на правописание:

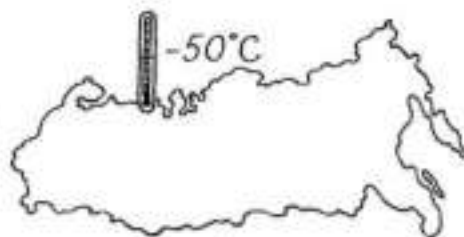
angry — angrier — (the) angriest
cosy — cosier — (the) cosiest
happy — happier — (the) happiest
early — earlier — (the) earliest
big — bigger — (the) biggest
fat — fatter — (the) fattest
hot — hotter — (the) hottest
sad — sadder — (the) saddest

4. Match the sentences with the pictures.

- The boy is taller than the girl.
- The teacher is the tallest of them.
- The bank is higher than the shop.
- The TV Tower is the highest of them.
- The north of the USA is colder than the north of England.
- The north of Russia is the coldest.
- My mother is younger than my father.
- I am the youngest in the family.
- Tuesday was windier than Monday.
- Wednesday was the windiest day.
- Cars are slower than planes.
- Bikes are the slowest.



1.



2.



3.



4.



5.



6.



7.



8.



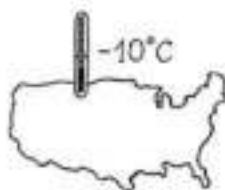
9.



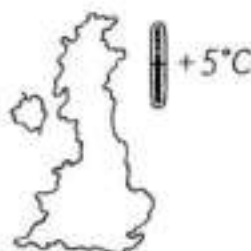
10.



11.



12.



5. Can you say it differently? Check, (41).

Example: Glasgow is not as big as London. (big/small)

Glasgow is smaller than London.

London is bigger than Glasgow.

1) The weather today is not as warm as yesterday. (cold/warm)

2) The dinner table is not as low as the coffee table. (high/low)

3) A collie dog is not as weak as a poodle. (strong/weak)

4) Autumn is not as dry as summer. (dry/rainy)

5) A park is not as big as a forest. (big/small)

6) My sister is not as old as my brother. (old/young)

7) The cinema is not as old as the theatre. (old/new)

8) The coffee is not as hot as the tea. (hot/cold)

¹ differently ['dɪfərəntli] — иначе, по-другому



Если прилагательные состоят из двух, трёх и более слогов (*pleasant, beautiful, interesting*) (кроме тех случаев, когда слово заканчивается на *-y, -er, -ow*), они образуют сравнительную и превосходную степени при помощи слов **more** (более) и **most** (самый), 🗣️ (42).

pleasant — more pleasant — (the) most pleasant
 beautiful — more beautiful — (the) most beautiful
 interesting — more interesting — (the) most interesting
 The old square is more beautiful than the new square.
 The book I am reading now is the most interesting book.



6. Put the words in the two columns¹.

sweet, pleasant, cold, sunny, low, narrow, strong,
 hot, big, beautiful, interesting, young, clever,
 boring, famous, terrible

I.
 -er/-est

.....

II.
 more/most

.....

7. Complete the sentences with *as* or *than*. Check and repeat, 🗣️ (43).

- 1) The Moskva River is shorter ... the Volga.
- 2) Ben is ... strong as his brother.
- 3) In summer it is hotter in the south ... in the north.
- 4) The film is ... interesting as the book.
- 5) My car is not ... old as your car.
- 6) The weather in spring is more pleasant ... in late autumn.
- 7) The days are longer in summer ... in winter.
- 8) The museum is as old ... the theatre.
- 9) The bedroom is cosier ... the living room.
- 10) Leo Tolstoy is ... famous in Russia as Alexander Pushkin.



¹ a column ['kɒləm] — колонка

Запомните, как образуются степени сравнения от прилагательных **good** и **bad**, (44).



good — better — (the) best bad — worse — (the) worst
 Tom's test was better than John's, but Alice's test was the best.
 The weather today is worse than it was yesterday.
 Jane's room was the worst of all.

8. Ben came to London from a small place in the north of England. What does he think of London?

Example: London is (big) than his place.
 London is bigger than his place.

The houses in London are (high) than in his place. The streets are (long) than in his place. The hotels are (cosy) than in his place. The cars are (good) than in his small town. The shop windows in London are (beautiful) than in his place. The museums in London are (interesting) than in his small town. The weather in London is (sunny) than in the north. In the restaurants he could eat (good) food than in his place. But soon he understood that the people in his town are (pleasant). When Ben came home from London, he was (happy) than in London.

9. A. Do you know it? Check, (45).

- 1) What is the longest river in the world?
- 2) What is the highest mountain in the world?
- 3) What is the biggest city in the world?
- 4) What is the hottest place in the world?
- 5) What is the coldest place in the world?
- 6) What is the biggest country in the world?
- 7) What is the smallest country in the world?
- 8) What is the biggest lake in the world?

B. Work in pairs and make short dialogues as in the example.

Example: — What is the longest river in the world?
 — The longest river in the world? I think, it's the Nile.



Do It on Your Own

10. Compare them.

- 1) Bill is ten. Polly is eight. (old)
- 2) Sarah is three. Alice is ten. (young)
- 3) Green Street is 500 m long. Apple street is 600 m long.
- 4) Tim's room is 26 m². Jane's room is 20 m². (big)
- 5) It is cold in Moscow in winter. It is very cold in Murmansk in winter.
- 6) James is happy. George is very happy.
- 7) Bess is tall. Helen is very tall.
- 8) Bob is angry. Andrew is very angry.
- 9) Lizzy's room is cosy. Margaret's room is very cosy.
- 10) Rex is a clever dog. Spot is very clever.

11. Choose the right word.

- 1) My story is (more interesting/most interesting) than Peter's story.
- 2) The market in the east of the city is as (big/bigger) as the market in the west.
- 3) Harold's souvenir is (better/best) than my souvenir.
- 4) A double-decker is (higher/highest) than a usual bus.
- 5) The Ural Mountains are (lower/lowest) than the Alps.
- 6) Jack is the (worse/worst) runner and Boris is the (better/best).
- 7) My trip to Suzdal was (more/the most) pleasant of all.
- 8) High Street is (narrower/the narrowest) in the city.
- 9) Little Billy is (weaker/the weakest) than his brother.
- 10) Ann is the (happier/happiest) of all her friends.

12. Check yourself.

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
10	10	
11	10	

Step Five

Do It Together

1. A. Listen to the song,  (46). What words are missing?

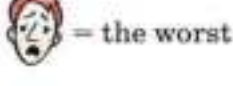
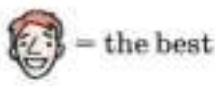
SHORTER, TALLER




by Carolyn Graham




Shorter, _____, bigger, _____,
Bigger, _____, shorter, _____,
Shorter, _____, weaker, _____,
Weaker, _____, shorter, _____,
This desk is small. That desk is smaller.
This teacher's _____. That teacher's _____.
This class is big. That class is _____.
That teacher's very tall.




B. Sing along.

2. Use the right words. Check,  (47).









1) Mary's bike is . Alice's bike is . But Kate's bike is .




2) Alice's car is . Kate's car is . Mary's car is .




3) Kate's house is . Mary's house is . Alice's house is .




4) Kate is a  cook. Alice is a  cook. But Mary is .

5) Alice is a  tennis player. Mary is a  tennis player. Kate is  tennis player.

6) Kate is a  driver. Mary is a  driver. Alice is  driver.

7) Mary is a  wife. Alice is a  wife. Kate is  wife.

8) Alice is a  chess player. Mary is a  chess player. Kate is  chess player.

9) Kate is a very  friend. Mary is a  friend. Alice is  friend.

3. Compare them.



1.

big/small



2.



3. Green Square

beautiful



4. Central Square

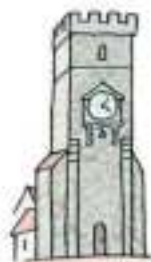


5.

good/bad



6.



7. The Clock Tower

high/low



8. The Television Tower



9. Queen Street

narrow



10. Church Street



11. St Mary-at-the-River
(1273)

old



12. St Margaret-in-the-Forest
(1984)

4. Learn how to pronounce and use the new words, (48).



A.

get to — добираться до

from — из, от, с

far — далёкий; далеко

bridge [brɪdʒ] — мост

post office [ˈpəʊst ɒfɪs] — почта

road [rəʊd] — дорога

railway [ˈreɪlweɪ] — железная
дорога

underground [ˈʌndəgraʊnd] —

метро, подземка

palace [ˈpæləs] — дворец

straight [streɪt] — прямой;

прямо

miss — пропускать

turn [tɜ:n] — поворачивать

B.

get — **got**: to get to school, to get to work, to get home. I usually get to school at a quarter to eight. How do you get to the airport? — I usually get there by bus.

from: a letter from Jane, from London to Leeds, from nine to eleven, from Monday to Friday. We travelled to London from Glasgow. Peter works from nine to five.

far (farther, farthest): a far street, a far country, far from here, far from the centre. Sue lives far from school. Is the supermarket far from here?

far away: My cousin went far away.

as far as: Walk as far as the church.

bridge: a narrow bridge, a long bridge, under the bridge. There are a lot of beautiful bridges in London.

post office: a small post office. Is there a post office not far from your house? There are two post offices in my street.

road: a big road, the road to the castle. Is this the road to York?

railway: an old railway. They are building a new railway in the city.

railway station: Where is the nearest railway station? How can I get to the railway station, please? There are a lot of railway stations in Moscow.

underground: to go by underground, an underground station, the London Underground, the Moscow Underground (Metro). We went from Trafalgar Square to Paddington Station by underground. Do you usually go by bus or by metro?

palace: a beautiful palace, an old palace. The Queen lives in Buckingham Palace. The Winter Palace is in St Petersburg.

straight: a straight street, a straight road, a straight railway, to go straight. Come straight home.


straight on: Walk straight on!


miss: to miss the house, to miss the museum. Walk straight on. The post office is on the left. You can't miss it.

turn: to turn right, to turn left. Jim walked straight on to the museum and then turned left.

MEMO

I.

to take  a train — сесть на поезд
a plane — полететь самолётом
a taxi — взять такси

to miss  a train — опоздать на поезд
a plane — опоздать на самолёт
a bus — опоздать на автобус

II. a bus stop — автобусная остановка

a railway station — вокзал, железнодорожная станция

an underground station — станция метро

5. Where do you go?

- 1) When I want to buy some food, I go to a supermarket.
- 2) When I want to take a bus, I go
- 3) When I want to take a train, I go
- 4) When I want to cross¹ a river, I go
- 5) When I want to have a good dinner, I go
- 6) When I want to see some good pictures, I go
- 7) When I want to send a letter or a telegram, I go
- 8) When I want to buy some vegetables or flowers, I go
- 9) When I want to watch a new film, I go
- 10) When I want to take a walk, I go
- 11) When I want to fly to some city, I go
- 12) When I want to travel by metro, I go
- 13) When I want to travel by train, I go

¹ to cross [kros] — пересечь, перейти



DIALOGUES

1)

- Excuse me. How can I get to Trafalgar Square?
- Walk straight on and turn left near the bank. You can't miss it.
- Is it far from here?
- No, it isn't.
- Thank you very much.
- You're welcome.

2)

- Excuse me.
- Can I help you?
- How can I get to the nearest post office?
- The post office is in High Street. Turn left at the bridge, walk straight on and turn right. You can't miss it.
- Thanks a lot.
- You're welcome.

3)

- Can you help me, please?
- What can I do for you?
- How can I get to Central Underground Station?
- Take bus 71. It drives past Central Station.
- Thank you very much.
- You're welcome.

4)

- Excuse me.
- Yes?
- How can I get to the Odeon Cinema in Garden Road?
- Turn right near the post office and walk straight on as far as the church. At the church turn right again. You can't miss it.
- Thank you very much for your help.
- You're welcome.

B. Complete the dialogue. Act it out.

- Excuse me. Can you help me?
.....
- How can I get to ?
- Walk straight on and
- Is it far from here?
- Yes,

— Can I take a bus?

— Thank you for your help.

7. Where are they situated? Check, ☑ (50).

1) Some famous bridges of the world:

Tower Bridge

Palace Bridge

The Golden Gate Bridge

a) San Francisco, California, the USA

b) St Petersburg, Russia

c) London, Great Britain



2) Some famous museums of the world:

the British Museum

the Louvre ['lu:vʀə]

the Hermitage ['hɜ:mɪtɪʒ]

a) Paris

b) London

c) St Petersburg



3) Some famous picture galleries of the world:

the National Gallery
the Tretyakov Gallery
the Prado ['prɑ:dəu] Gallery

a) London
b) Moscow
c) Madrid



4) Some famous Opera Houses of the world:

Covent Garden
La Scala
the Bolshoi Theatre

a) Milan
b) Moscow
c) London



5) Some famous towers of the world:

- the Spasskaya Tower
- the Eiffel Tower
- the Post Office Tower (the Telecom Tower)

- a) London
- b) Moscow
- c) Paris



6) Some famous monuments of the world:

- the Monument to Peter the Great¹
- the Statue of Liberty²
- the Monument to Admiral Nelson

- a) London
- b) St Petersburg
- c) New York



¹ Peter the Great [ˈpɪ:tə ðə ˈɡreɪt] — Пётр Великий (*российский император*)

² the Statue of Liberty [ˈstætʃu: əv ˈlɪbətɪ] — статуя Свободы

7) Some famous palaces of the world:

the Kremlin Palace
the Winter Palace
Buckingham Palace

a) St Petersburg
b) Moscow
c) London



8. Complete the text. Speak about Yura and Lena's holiday in London. Check, (51).

When Yura and Lena were in London, they visited a lot of wonderful places. They (¹see) the British Museum and Buckingham Palace. They (²go) to the London Museum and London Zoo. Together they (³walk) in Hyde Park. Then they (⁴take) the famous London Underground, one of the oldest in the world, and (⁶get) to



Trafalgar Square. Lena, who likes pictures, (⁶decide) to go to the National Gallery. Yura went with her.

Yura and Lena (⁷buy) some souvenirs for their family and friends. The brother and sister (⁸make) a tour of London on a red double-decker bus.

The children (⁹love) London and (¹⁰enjoy) staying with the Barkers. John and Sally (¹¹make) their stay in England very pleasant. Yura (¹²take) a lot of pictures and (¹³show) them to his parents and his friends when he (¹⁴come) back to Moscow.



Все называют Букингемский дворец (Buckingham Palace) символом британской монархии. Это главный дворец, в котором живет королевская семья. Две другие резиденции находятся в Эдинбурге (Holyrood House) и Виндзоре (Windsor Castle).

Здание Букингемского дворца было построено в XVIII веке. В то время оно принадлежало герцогу Букингемскому. Дворец несколько раз перестраивался и стал официальной королевской резиденцией, когда на трон вступила королева Виктория. В знак присутствия королевы над дворцом поднимается королевский флаг. Перед зданием на площади расположен Мемориал королевы Виктории (Queen Victoria Memorial). Сады и дворец закрыты для публики, для посещения открыты только королевские конюшни (the Royal Mews) и Галерея королевы (the Queen's Gallery), в которой выставлены картины из королевской коллекции.

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

What is the most interesting place to visit in Great Britain?
Why?

9. Speak about a place you visited.

What is it?	a city, a town, a small place
Where is it?	in Russia, abroad, in the north, in the south, in the east, in the west, in the centre (of Russia)
What is it like?	big, small, beautiful, boring, interesting, wonderful
Where did you stay?	in a hotel, with friends, in a camp

What did you do?	did museums, walked in the city, looked at the monuments, took pictures...
What did you see?	interesting museums, picture galleries, castles and palaces, beautiful places...
What did you buy?	souvenirs, postcards, books...
How did you travel?	by plane, by bus, by train, by car, by sea

Do It on Your Own

10. Article *the* or no article?


- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1) (?) Buckingham Palace | 11) (?) Hyde Park |
| 2) (?) Tower Bridge | 12) (?) Trafalgar Square |
| 3) (?) British Museum | 13) (?) Bolshoi Theatre |
| 4) (?) Thames | 14) (?) National Gallery |
| 5) (?) London | 15) (?) Central Station |
| 6) (?) Paddington Station | 16) (?) Winter Palace |
| 7) (?) London Underground | 17) (?) River Road |
| 8) (?) Post Office Tower | 18) (?) New York |
| 9) (?) Moscow Metro | 19) (?) London Zoo |
| 10) (?) Odeon Cinema | 20) (?) Great Britain |


11. Complete the sentences.

- 1) Go  as far as Covent Garden Underground Station.
- 2) Walk to the post office and turn .
- 3) Walk as far as the supermarket and turn .
- 4) Take  18 to Central Square.
- 5) Is the  far from here?


6) Take a  to the railway station.

7) The London  is very old.

8) This is a bus and this is a .

9) The Queen of Britain lives in .

10) There are a lot of  on the Thames.

11) The City of York has a beautiful old .

12. Check yourself.

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
10	20	
11	11	



Step One

Do It Together

1. Listen, (52). What words are missing?



A. Yesterday I decided to go to the new ⁽¹⁾. It is not ⁽²⁾ from my house, but I didn't know the way² very well. I walked down the ⁽³⁾ and turned ⁽⁴⁾. After that I walked as far as the ⁽⁵⁾ and turned right at the ⁽⁶⁾. I walked up Garden Road to the ⁽⁷⁾ station. The ⁽⁸⁾ was behind it.

B. — ⁽¹⁾, how do I get to the ⁽²⁾ ?

— Oh, it's not far from here. You can ⁽³⁾ buses 15 or 83.

— And where's the ⁽⁴⁾ ?

— It's near the ⁽⁵⁾ station down this road.

— Thank you very much.

— You're ⁽⁶⁾.

MEMO

Обратите внимание на то, как в английском языке используются некоторые предлоги.

up the river — по реке (*против её течения*)

down the river — по реке (*по течению*)

down the street (road) — вдоль по улице (*в направлении от говорящего*)

¹ biography [baɪ'ɒɡrəfi] — биография

² a way [weɪ] — путь, дорога

2. Complete the sentences. Check, (53).

from, by, to, down, on

- 1) How can I get ... the nearest bank? — Walk straight ... and turn left.
- 2) How do you get ... the post office? — I go ... metro.
- 3) I often get letters ... my good friends.
- 4) The shop is open ... nine ... six.
- 5) My house is ... this street, ... the left.
- 6) Meet my friend Denis. He is ... Leeds.
- 7) We had little time and got ... the railway station ... taxi.
- 8) I go to school ... Monday ... Friday.
- 9) Is the town museum far ... here?
- 10) I can't swim up this river. — OK, swim ... the river then.

3. Has the town got them?



Example: The town has got a square.

The town hasn't got a museum.

square
bridge
airport
palace
church

post office
railway station
underground
opera house
picture gallery

castle
cinema
theatre
park
bank

school
hospital
zoo
bus stop
museum

MEMO

Выразить отрицание в английском языке можно по-разному.

not a

↓

I haven't
got a dog.

no

↓

I have no dog.
There is no coffee here.

not any

↓

I haven't got any pets.
There is not any coffee
here.
There are not any apples
here.

There are no apples here.

No указывает на полное отсутствие чего-либо и непосредственно примыкает к последующему имени существительному или словосочетанию с ним: no friends, no good friends, no apples, no red apples, no rooms, no cosy rooms.

4. Do you have them?

Example: I have (no) good friends at school.

— good friends at school?

— good friends in your street?

— pets in the house?

— (a) diary?

— interesting books?

— English books at home?

— (a) computer?

— any souvenirs from London?

— (a) CD¹ player and good CDs?

— (a) piano?

— any hobbies?

— any talents?

¹ a CD [si:'di:] = a compact disc

5. There are some things that you don't have. Would you like to have them?

Example: I haven't got a CD player at home, but I would like to have it. I haven't got any pets, but I would like to have them.

6. Listen to the tape, (54), and repeat.

(the) 1st first [fɜːst]	(the) 11th eleventh [ɪ'levənθ]
(the) 2nd second ['sekənd]	(the) 12th twelfth [twelfθ]
(the) 3rd third [θɜːd]	(the) 13th thirteenth [θɜː'tiːnθ]
(the) 4th fourth [fɔːθ]	(the) 14th fourteenth [fɔː'tiːnθ]
(the) 5th fifth [fɪfθ]	(the) 15th fifteenth [fɪftiːnθ]
(the) 6th sixth [sɪksθ]	(the) 16th sixteenth [sɪks'tiːnθ]
(the) 7th seventh ['sevənθ]	(the) 17th seventeenth [ˌsevən'tiːnθ]
(the) 8th eighth [eɪθ]	(the) 18th eighteenth [eɪ'tiːnθ]
(the) 9th ninth [naɪnθ]	(the) 19th nineteenth [ˌnaɪn'tiːnθ]
(the) 10th tenth [tenθ]	(the) 20th twentieth [ˌtwentɪθ]

MEMO

Порядковые числительные в английском языке можно образовать от количественных числительных, если к ним прибавить суффикс **-th**, например: **fourth, tenth, twentieth**. Порядковые числительные **first, second** и **third** надо запомнить. Обратите внимание на дефис при написании сложных числительных.

(the) twenty-first	the first lesson
(the) twenty-second	the fourth letter
(the) sixty-fifth	the seventh day
(the) seventy-sixth	the twentieth book
(the) eighty-seventh	(the) hundredth

Однако если речь не идёт о порядке следования, в английском языке употребляются количественные числительные, которые обычно стоят после имени существительного (например, **page 3**). Оба слова могут быть написаны с заглавной буквы.

Room Five	Lesson ¹ 11
Page Forty	Letter 4

7. Say the numbers. Check, (55).

A. 1, 12, 5, 30, 40, 84, 98, 100.

B. 21st, 22nd, 33rd, 44th, 55th, 66th, 77th, 88th, 99th, 100th.

¹ a lesson [lesn] — урок

Постарайтесь запомнить написание следующих числительных:

four — fourteen — forty — (the) fortieth — (the) forty-fourth
 five — fifteen — fifty — (the) fiftieth — (the) fifty-fifth
 twelve — (the) twelfth

8. When were they born? Check, Ⓢ (56).

Example: Denis was born
 on the twenty-first
 of March nineteen
 eighty-five.

Charles: 14.07.1994

Ruth: 06.01.2001

Anthony: 17.08.1996

Roger: 29.12.2002

Lizzy: 13.09.1986

Helen: 04.11.1953

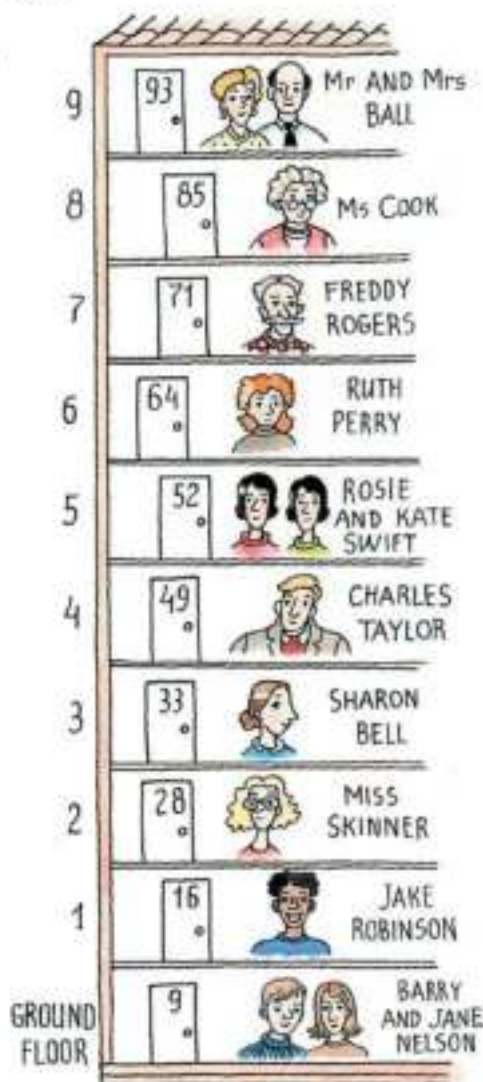
John: 01.02.1948

Chris: 30.04.1973

Alice: 28.06.1980

9. Where are they?

Example: Barry and Jane
 Nelson are on
 the ground floor.
 They are in Room
 Nine.



10. A. Listen to the text, (57), and read it. What do the new words mean? Say what you can about John.



JOHN'S BIOGRAPHY

John Barker was born in London on 12 October 2000. He has a mother, Margaret Barker (born in 1978), a father, Harry Barker (born in 1975) and a younger sister Sally (born in 2002). Harry Barker is a children's doctor and Margaret Barker teaches music at school. The family live in London. Their address is 19, Green Street.



John went to school when he was five (all children in Great Britain do¹). Now he is in his sixth year². At school he does English, mathematics, French and Russian. He would like to speak Russian well. He has some very good friends in Russia.

John wants to be a journalist ['dʒɜːnəlɪst] and travel all over the world and meet a lot of interesting people. He would like to work for television. A good journalist speaks two or three languages and John is learning ['lɜːnɪŋ] French and Russian. He would like to learn Spanish too.

John isn't always a good pupil. He has too many things to do. He loves sport and photography [fə'tɒgrəfi]. He takes pictures of the places he visits. He has some very good pictures of the Lake District and Scotland. This year John is working a lot. He wants to be one of the best students in his class and go to university [juːnɪ'vɜːsɪti] after school, he has very little time, but he rides a bike and plays football with his friends.

B. This is John's form³. And what is your form like?

Name <u>John Barker</u> Date of birth <u>12 October 2000</u> Place of birth <u>London</u> Address <u>19, Green Street, London</u> Family <u>father, mother, sister</u> Occupation <u>a year six pupil</u> Interests <u>photography, sport</u> Language(s) <u>French, Russian</u> Occupation of your choice <u>journalist</u>	You?
--	------

¹ Глагол *do* здесь заменяет глагол *go*.

² **in his sixth year** — в шестом классе (шестой год обучения)

³ **a form** — анкета

Русскому словосочетанию «в первом (втором, третьем и т. д.) классе» соответствует английское *in the first (second, third etc) year*. Про первоклассника можно сказать *a year one pupil*, про второклассника скажут *a year two pupil* и т. д. Таким образом, как правило, в английских школах, как и в российских, нумерация классов сквозная.

Do It on Your Own

11. Look at the plan of Ipsen. Write what Ipsen hasn't got.

Example: Ipsen has no port.
There is no port in Ipsen.



theatre, airport, port, hotels, shop, school, cinema, church, squares, swimming pool, bus stops, museum, bank, restaurant

12. Can you write the numbers in words?

- 1) Michael lives on the 9th floor.
- 2) Today is the 50th day of the year and the 12th day of the month.
- 3) This is my 2nd bike.
- 4) There are 43 people on the bus. You are the 44th.
- 5) Jane was my 1st friend in London.
- 6) What is the 12th month of the year?
- 7) That was Mr Clark's 76th birthday.
- 8) The Odeon is the 8th cinema in our town.

13. Check yourself.

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
11	10	
12	8	

Step Two

Do It Together

1. A. What years are they in? 🎧 (58a).

- 1) Sofia is in the ... year.
- 2) Bernard is in the ... year, he is 14 years old.
- 3) Linda is in the ... year too.
- 4) Mark is in the ... year.



- 5) Polly is very young, she doesn't go to school.
- 6) Sam is in the ... year. He is finishing school.
- 7) Ruth is in the ... year, she is eleven.
- 8) And what year are you in?

B. When were they born? 🎧 (58b).

- 1) Sofia was born on the ... of January.
- 2) Bernard was born on the ... of July.
- 3) Linda was born on the ... of April.
- 4) Mark was born on the ... of September.
- 5) Polly was born on the ... of May.
- 6) Sam was born on the ... of December.
- 7) Ruth was born on the ... of November.
- 8) And when were you born?

2. **A. How are they coming to the finishing tape¹?**

Example: Ben Ross is going to be the first.



Ben Ross is a runner in red and white.

Donald Grey is from Canada.

Moris la Roches has blue trainers² and red socks.

Paul Sedov is the youngest of all runners. He is from Russia.

Kim Lee is the shortest of the runners.

Al Brodie is a runner in green and yellow.

Rob Burton is the tallest runner.

B. Where are they living?

Example: Ben Ross is in Room 10.

Ben Ross has a big room with two windows.

Donald Grey has a jacuzzi³.

Moris la Roches has the biggest television.

Pavel Sedov's window looks onto the sea.

Kim Lee has a lot of green plants in his room.

Al Brodie's room has a lot of photographs on the walls.

Rob Burton's room has a small kitchen.

¹ finishing tape ['fɪnɪʃɪŋ teɪp] — финишная лента

² trainers ['treɪnəz] — кроссовки

³ a jacuzzi [dʒə'kʊ:zi] — ванная с подачей воды под большим давлением



1.

2.

3.

4.



5.



6.



7.

MEMO

Известные вам вопросительные слова **how, where, when, why, who, what, which**¹ могут использоваться в придаточных дополнительных предложениях, (59).

- 1) I don't know **where** John lives. — Я не знаю, где Джон живёт.
- 2) Do you know **why** he is here? — Ты знаешь, почему он здесь?
- 3) I know **who** is in Room Five. — Я знаю, кто в пятой комнате.
- 4) Say **where** you are going. — Скажи, куда ты идёшь.
- 5) Say **what** she gave mum. — Скажи, что она подарила маме.
- 6) Say **which** is your pen. — Скажи, какая ручка твоя.

Так как придаточные предложения вопросами не являются, в них прямой порядок следования слов — подлежащее, сказуемое, дополнение, обстоятельство. Вспомогательные глаголы **do/does/did** не употребляются.

Сравните:

- 1) Where is Kate? — I don't know where Kate is.
- 2) Where does Kate live? — I know where Kate lives.

¹ **which** — который, какой



3. Complete the sentences.

- 1) a) Do you know where ...?
b) James asked me, "Where ...?"
- 2) a) I want to know when ...
b) "When ...?" I want to know this.
- 3) a) We would like to see what ...
b) "What...?" Bob asked.
- 4) a) Ask Alice why ...
b) "Why ...?" Peter asked.
- 5) a) I don't know which book ..., Jane.
b) "Which book ..., Jane?"

- 1) does he live
2) he lives
- 1) he is going to Moscow
2) is he going to Moscow
- 1) is he doing now
2) he is doing now
- 1) is Betty at home
2) Betty is at home
- 1) are you reading
2) you are reading

4. Listen,  (60), and repeat. What do these words mean?

journalist [ˈdʒɜːnəlɪst]: I'd like to be a journalist.

career [kəˈrɪə]: What career would you like to make?

profession [prəˈfeʃən]: The profession of a teacher. What do you know about the profession of a teacher?

medicine [ˈmedɪsən]: Medicine helps people. Where did your father do medicine?

medical [ˈmedɪkl]: Jake made a career in the medical profession.

hospital [ˈhɒspɪtl]: Jill works in a London hospital.

university [juːnɪˈvɜːsɪti]: My brother does English in the Moscow State University.

patient [ˈpeɪʃənt]: There are a hundred patients in the hospital.

photography [fəˈtɒɡrəfi]: Photography is my hobby, I enjoy photography.

photograph [ˈfəʊtəɡrɑːf] (photo): Who is in the photograph?

5. Learn how to pronounce and use the new words,  (61).

A.

animal [ˈænɪməl] — животное

answer [ˈɑːnsə] — 1) *n* ответ;

2) *v* отвечать

ask [ɑːsk] — спрашивать

because [bɪˈkɒz] — потому что

dream [driːm] — 1) *n* мечта;

2) *v* мечтать

interest [ˈɪntrəst] — интерес

job [dʒɒb] — работа, занятие

leave [liːv] — покидать, уезжать

marry [ˈmæri] — выходить замуж, жениться

question [ˈkwɛstʃən] — вопрос

- B.**
- animal:** a small animal. Cats, dogs and birds are all animals. Were there many animals on the farm?
- answer:** a clever answer, a bad answer, to get an answer (to a letter). The teacher said he liked my answer.
- ask:** Jane asked me how to get to the market. Did you ask Bob about his career?
- because:** Why is Edward at home? — Because he is ill. Why are you going to Leeds? — Because I live there.
- because of:** I was late because of my little brother.
- dream:** wonderful dreams. Alice's dream was to become a journalist.
- dream — dreamed (dreamt) [dremt]:** I dreamed that I was in a beautiful palace. She dreams to be a painter.
- interest:** Football and pop music are Alan's two interests. To be interested in planes (cars, computers, music). Little Stewart is interested in taking pictures.
- job:** an interesting job, a terrible job, a boring job. Douglas ['dʌgləs] finished school and got his first job. What is your job? — I'm a journalist.
- leave — left:** to leave school, to leave the house. What time are you going to leave home to go to the station? Colin left his job in May. Did you leave the window open?
- leave for:** to leave for London, to leave Moscow for St Petersburg. We are going to leave London for Glasgow on 19th June.
- marry — married:** to marry a girl, to marry a doctor. Samuel is going to marry my sister. She and Mike married last month.
- be married:** Now they are married.
- question:** an unusual question, to answer a question. Little Tony didn't answer my question.

6. Match them.

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1) to ask | a) a beautiful girl |
| 2) to leave | b) the house |
| 3) to answer | c) in animals |
| 4) to marry | d) questions |
| 5) to be interested | e) the telephone |

7. A. Which is true¹ about you?

- 1) I love animals.
- 2) I hate animals.
- 3) I dream to be a teacher.
- 4) I'd like to make a career in medicine.
- 5) I'm interested in photography.
- 6) I enjoy meeting people.
- 7) I don't like sport.
- 8) I'm not interested in English.
- 9) I'd like to have a good job after I leave school.
- 10) I'd like to go to university.
- 11) I enjoy asking questions, but I don't like answering them.
- 12) I always know how to answer a question.
- 13) My dream is to travel a lot.
- 14) My dream is to marry and have a family.
- 15) I'm happy when I'm with my friends.
- 16) I enjoy going to school.
- 17) I'm not thinking about my career now.
- 18) I think school is boring.
- 19) I would like to work abroad.
- 20) I think the place where I live is the best in the world.

B. Speak about your likes and dislikes.

8. Read the text, complete the sentences after it and tell everything you know about Harry Barker.

HARRY BARKER

Harry Barker was born on 16th September 1975 in a farmer's family. He spent his early years on his father's farm. They always had a lot of animals. Harry usually helped his parents and worked on the farm. He fed the cows, sheep and horses, watered the plants in the garden. He often asked his father questions about his animals and got answers. Harry was interested in medicine. He wanted to know how to help the animals. But his dream was to help people: he wanted to become a doctor, a children's doctor.



¹ true [tru:] — верно

When Harry was eighteen, he left his home for London and began doing medicine. His university years were the happiest years of his life. He did what he liked doing.

When Harry was 23, he met Margaret. They married and had two children — a boy and a girl. They are a happy family.

Now Harry is working in a new hospital in the south-west of London. He loves his job and is making a wonderful career. His little patients and their parents like him very much because he is a very good doctor.

- 1) Harry's father was a
- 2) When a young boy, Harry was interested in
- 3) Harry's dream was to be a
- 4) When Harry was 18, he went to
- 5) Now Harry is a children's doctor in a
- 6) His patients like Harry Barker because



MEMO

Притяжательные местоимения в английском языке имеют ещё одну, так называемую абсолютную форму, (62).

Притяжательные местоимения	Абсолютная форма притяжательных местоимений
my	mine
his	his
her	hers
its	—
our	ours
your	yours
their	theirs

После притяжательных местоимений в абсолютной форме существительные не употребляются.

Is it your pen, Ann?

Yes, it is. It is mine.

Is it Ben's book?

No, it isn't his, it is yours.

Jane gave us her address and we gave her ours.

I know your telephone number, I don't know theirs.



9. Complete the sentences.

- 1) It is his souvenir. The souvenir is
- 2) They are her flowers. The flowers are
- 3) It is their castle. The castle is
- 4) It is my diary. The diary is
- 5) They are our boats. The boats are
- 6) They are your postcards. The postcards are

Do It on Your Own**10. Complete the sentences.**

- 1) I gave him my address and he gave me his.
- 2) She gave me ... address and I gave her
- 3) They gave us ... address and we gave them
- 4) We gave her ... address and she gave us
- 5) You gave them ... address and they gave you
- 6) He gave you ... address and you gave him

11. Write it in one sentence.

Example: Where does he live? I'd like to know it.
I'd like to know where he lives.


- 1) When are they leaving Moscow? I'd like to know it.
- 2) Why is he happy? I'd like to know it.
- 3) Who is coming by the 9 o'clock train? I'd like to know it.
- 4) Where does he do medicine? I'd like to know it.
- 5) How can they answer this question? I'd like to know it.
- 6) What do you enjoy doing? I'd like to know.
- 7) Which language do you speak — English or French? I'd like to know.

12. Check yourself.

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
10	6	
11	7	

Step Three

Do It Together

1. Listen,  (63), and complete the sentences. Check and repeat.

SELFISH¹

(after Carolyn Graham)

This is mine!

That's ...!

Don't touch² mine!

Get ... own.

This is mine.

That's

That's

Hey! What are you doing?

What are you doing with that?

That's

Hey! What are you doing?

What are you doing with that?

That's

Hey! What are you doing?

What are you doing with that?

That's hers.

What's ... is


What's ... is

What's ... is

What's ... is

What's ... is

What's ... is

2. What does Bob ask? Check,  (64).

Example: Where does John live? — He asks where John lives.

¹ selfish [ˈselfɪʃ] — эгоистичный

² to touch [tʌtʃ] — трогать, дотрагиваться

- 1) Why does Jack go there so often? He asks why
- 2) Who does Ruth take out for a walk? He asks who Ruth
- 3) How many maps have they got? He asks how many maps
- 4) What countries did Tony visit? He asks what countries Tony
- 5) How well does Bob know Spanish? He asks how well Bob
- 6) What pets has Alice got? He asks what pets
- 7) When did Rob come back? He asks when Rob ...



3. Complete the sentences.

- 1) This is (my/mine) university.
- 2) Doctor Smith, is this (your/yours) patient? — Yes, Polly is (my/mine) patient.
- 3) (Their/theirs) friend Douglas is a journalist.
- 4) I am going to answer all (her/hers) questions.
- 5) (Our/ours) dream was to travel in Spain.
- 6) We gave them (our/ours) address and they gave us (their/theirs).
- 7) Which bag is (her/hers)?
- 8) Is photography (your/yours) hobby?
- 9) Sharon has no answer to (her/hers) question.
- 10) Eddy and Mike are not at school because (their/theirs) little sister is ill.



MEMO

Общие вопросы типа **Does she play tennis? Can Jack drive a car? Has Andy got any pets at home?** легко переделать в придаточные предложения при помощи слова **if** (*ли, если*), начав предложение со следующих структур:

I want to know...

I don't know...

We would like to know...

They are interested...

You ask...

Сравните:

- | | |
|---------------------------|--|
| 1. Does she play tennis? | 1. I'd like to know if she plays tennis. |
| 2. Can Jack drive? | 2. We are interested if Jack can drive. |
| 3. Has Andy got any pets? | 3. They don't know if Andy has got any pets. |
| 4. Was Boris at home? | 4. Clair asks if Boris was at home. |

4. This is what Jerry is thinking about. Say what he would like to know. Check, (65).



- 1) Is mum at home?
- 2) Is she cooking now?
- 3) Was she in the shop this morning?
- 4) Is father going to come home early?
- 5) Does he go to the bank on Fridays?
- 6) Can father take us to the cinema today?
- 7) Do they show a James Bond film in the cinema?
- 8) Does mum like James Bond films?
- 9) Can she go with us?
- 10) Are we going to enjoy the film?



5. Answer the questions if you can.

Example: Do fish jump high?

I don't know if fish jump high./I know fish jump high.

- 1) Do people live high in the mountains?
- 2) Is painting pictures an interesting occupation?
- 3) Can dogs play the piano?
- 4) Is January a winter month in Australia?
- 5) Is the weather warm or cold in Great Britain now?
- 6) Do they speak English in South America?
- 7) Does the new year begin on 1 January in all the countries?
- 8) Were the first films made in Russia?
- 9) Were the first cars big or small?
- 10) Does the British Queen like travelling abroad?

6. Listen, (66), and repeat. What do these new words mean?



college ['kɒlɪdʒ]: a medical college, a good college. Paul is going to college in September. Alice is a college student.

stop [stɒp]: The car stopped near the college. Stop playing football. Rosie stopped her teacher and asked her a question.

talent ['tælənt]: a talent for music, a talent for sport. Ted has a talent for painting.



A.

choose — выбирать**die** — умирать**difficult** [ˈdɪfɪkəlt] — трудный**easy** [ˈi:zi] — лёгкий**money** — деньги**success** [sək'ses] — успех**successful** [sək'sesfəl] — успешный**talk** [tɔ:k] — разговаривать**woman** [ˈwʊmən] — женщина**become** [bɪ'kʌm] — становиться**go out** — выйти, сходить куда-то**look after** — заботиться

B.

choose — **chose**: to choose a career, to choose a book. Did you choose a doll, Olga? Ben chose two balloons.**die** — **died**: Mrs Winston died in 1999. Barry West was born in September 1934 and died in July 2002.**difficult**: a difficult text, a difficult job. This sentence is very difficult. I can't read it.**easy**: an easy plan, an easy job. Mary's job is easier than yours. Yours is more difficult.**money**: to have a lot of money, to have little money. Take the money and go to the shop. There is no money in the moneybox.**success**: to have success, to be a success. The new film had a lot of success. Her new book is a success. John's career as a journalist is a success.**successful**: a successful teacher, a successful writer. Margaret Barker is a successful music teacher.**talk** — **talked**: to talk a lot, to talk to a friend. They are all talking together. Can their little son talk? Alice is teaching her bird to talk.**woman** — **women** [ˈwɪmɪn]: a beautiful woman, a tall woman, a young woman. Three women, ten women, fifteen women. There were some women in the room.**become** — **became**: to become a writer. He went to university to become a doctor. After school my granny became a nurse.**go out**: Let's go out in the evening. I often go out with my friends.**look after**: My cousin has got three pets and looks after all of them. When my granny is ill, I always look after her.

8. Complete the sentences.

after, at, for, in, out, to

1) Jane is in Leeds. I'm looking ... her flowers. 2) Let's go ... to the disco this evening. 3) Peter has a talent ... music. 4) Tony is going ... school and his sister is going ... college in autumn. 5) I like animals and my brother is interested ... cars and computers. 6) Is John ... home? — No, he is ... school. 7) What can you see ... this picture? 8) We left St Petersburg ... Moscow. Now we are living in the capital of our country. 9) I would like to go ... with my friends tonight. 10) The teacher asked Margaret to talk ... her son.

9. Listen to the text, (68), and then read it. Complete the sentences after the text and tell everything you know about Margaret Barker.



MARGARET BARKER

Margaret Barker was born on 8th August 1978. Her father was a pilot, but he died young. There were two children in the family and Margaret's mother began working at the post office. Their life was not easy, because the family had little money. After school Margaret didn't go to university. She went to college. She had a talent for music, could sing and play the piano. Soon Margaret became a school teacher of music. She chose this difficult profession and was never sorry about it. Her career is very successful and she loves working with children.



When Margaret met Harry Barker, married him and had children, she didn't stop working. She works at school in the south of London two days a week and spends a lot of time with John and Sally, her children. She looks after the house, goes to the shops and cooks. Her husband and children help her.

Margaret enjoys going out with her husband, playing games with her children and talking to them. She has some friends and meets them at weekends. She thinks she is a very happy woman.

- 1) Margaret's parents were ... rich¹.
- 2) When Margaret was very young, she was interested in

¹ rich [rɪʃ] — богатый

- 3) Now Margaret teaches music at
- 4) Margaret ... her profession.
- 5) Margaret's helpers in the house are
- 6) On Saturdays and Sundays Margaret goes out with her

10. A. What questions and answers are missing?

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1) When was Margaret Barker born? | On 8th August 1978. |
| 2) What was her father? | |
| 3) | She worked at the post office. |
| 4) Where did Margaret go after school? | |
| 5) | She had a talent for music. |
| 6) What's Margaret's profession now? | |
| 7) | Yes, her career is very successful. |
| 8) What's her husband's name? | |
| 9) | Their names are John and Sally. |
| 10) What does Margaret enjoy doing? | |



Колледжи и университеты (Colleges and Universities) в Великобритании предлагают курсы обучения после школы. Колледжи дают в основном знания по конкретному предмету неакадемического толка, т. е. то, что учащимся пригодится на практике (a medical college, a secretarial [ˌsekɹɪˈteəriəl] college).

Университеты предлагают классическое образование, часто теоретического характера и более глубокое, чем образование в колледжах. Самые известные и самые старые университеты Англии — **Oxford** (основан в XIII веке) и **Cambridge** (основан в начале XIII века). Эти университеты, в отличие от всех остальных, сами состоят из отдельных колледжей (colleges), однако это не колледжи в обычном значении слова. Они, скорее, похожи на маленькие университеты.

B. Role-play a talk with Margaret Barker. Try and find as much as you can about her.

Do It on Your Own

11. What words are missing?

1) When my friend goes away, I often ... after her cat. 2) I think you ... too much on the telephone. 3) My grandad was born in 1930 and ... in 1999. 4) The party we had on Saturday was a ..., we all enjoyed it. 5) Is English easy or ... for you? 6) All people — men, ..., and children like good films. 7) I've got some CDs. Please ... anyone you like. 8) I have got a little ..., I'd like to buy souvenirs for my family. 9) My sister is a university student, but I'd like to go to ... after school. 10) My friend has a ... for music, he can sing and play the piano.

12. Check yourself.

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
11	10	

Step Four

Do It Together

1. Listen, (69), and complete the sentences.

- A.**
- | | |
|----------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1) Jill has a | 4) He is finishing school in |
| 2) His name is | 5) He is interested in |
| 3) He is | 6) He wants to become a |
- B.**
- | | |
|------------------------------|--|
| 1) May's grandad is a | 5) May's grandad writes about |
| 2) He is a ... journalist. | 6) May's grandad ... birds, he knows ... about them. |
| 3) May went out | |
| 4) May's grandad lives | |

2. Sam is a young journalist. He is going to interview¹ Martin Hunt, a British minister. What questions is he going to ask? Check, (70).

Example: Where were you born?

¹ to interview [ˈɪntəvju:] — брать интервью

I'd like to know:

- where he was born
- his parents' occupations
- to what school he went
- if school was easy or difficult for him
- if he went to college or university after school
- how he chose his career
- what his first job was like
- when he married Mrs Hunt
- if they have any children and grandchildren
- if he likes being a minister
- if he likes working with the Prime Minister
- if he is going to speak on television on Friday
- what he would like to say to people

3. Look at the pictures and say when they were born and when they died.



1. William Shakespeare
[ˈʃeɪkspiə]
1564—1616



2. Queen Victoria
1819—1901



3. Ernest Hemingway
1899—1961



4. Queen Elizabeth I
1533—1603



5. King Henry VIII
1491—1547



6. Ludwig van Beethoven
[ˈberθəʊvən] 1770—1827



7. Yuri Gagarin
1934—1968



8. Napoleon Bonaparte ['bʌnəpɔ:t]
1769—1821

4. Complete the sentences. Check, 🗣️ (71).



- 1) A. S. Pushkin b... popular when he was young. He was a s... poet who had a real t... . 2) Where is the m...? I'm going to the shops.
3) Valentina Tereshkova was the first w... astronaut ['æstrənɔ:t] in the world. 4) What are you t... about? I don't understand you.
5) A new Harry Potter book b... a real s... . 6) Is it d... or e... to learn English? 7) When did Charlie Chaplin d...? He d... in 1977.
8) Always ch... a book carefully. 9) The train doesn't s... at this station. 10) When are you going to your medical c...? 11) I hear your brother has a t... for painting.

MEMO

В английском языке не все имена существительные образуют множественное число при помощи окончания -s (journalists, questions, answers). Множественное число некоторых слов надо запомнить. Часть из них вы уже знаете.

man — men	tooth — teeth	foot — feet
woman — women ['wɪmɪn]	child — children	goose — geese
mouse — mice		

А некоторые существительные не изменяются во множественном числе:

one sheep — ten sheep — twenty sheep
one deer — two deer — eighty deer
one fish — eight fish — a hundred fish

5. How many? Say what the pictures show. Check, (72).



1. Two boys



2. ?



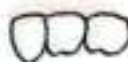
3. ?



4. ?



5. ?



6. ?



7. ?



8. ?



9. ?



10. ?



11. ?



12. ?

6. Match the words.

Example: far — near.

- | | | | |
|--------|-------------|-----------|-------|
| far | interesting | difficult | easy |
| man | die | much | few |
| boring | woman | many | north |
| live | little | south | near |

Имена существительные **hair**¹ (волосы), **money** (деньги), **news** (новость, новости) в английском языке не имеют формы множественного числа. Эти слова согласуются с глаголом в единственном числе и заменяются местоимением **it**. Неопределённый артикль с ними не употребляется.

Where is the money? **It is** on the table.
 I had a lot of money yesterday, but I spent **it**.
 Jack, **was** your money in the bag?
 John's hair is dark. **It is** short too.
 What's the news? There **is** no news today.

7. Complete the sentences. Check, (73).

- 1) Where (is/are) the money? (It/They) (is/are) on the shelf.
- 2) Where (is/are) the coins? (It/They) (is/are) on the table.
- 3) What colour (is/are) Jane's hair? (It/They) (is/are) black.
- 4) What colour (is/are) Mrs Armstrong's hair? (It/They) (is/are) grey.
- 5) The news (is/are) interesting. I didn't know (it/them).

Вы уже знаете, что множественное число существительных образуется, как правило, при помощи окончания **-s**.

N + s [z] day — days; dog — dogs
 [s] cat — cats

Ns	+ es [ɪz]	class — classes
Nx		box — boxes
Nch		bench — benches
Nsh		wish ² — wishes
Nf		wife — wives; shelf — shelves
N согласная + y		body — bodies; country — countries

¹ **hair** имеет также значение «волосок» (ср.: a hair, few hairs)

² **a wish** [wɪʃ] — желание, пожелание

8. Listen to the text, (74), then read it. Put these sentences in the right order¹.



- Britney Spears lived in New York.
- Britney Spears went to school in Kentwood.
- Britney Spears has got a house in Beverly Hills.
- Britney Spears was a success in a television show.

BRITNEY SPEARS

Britney Spears is one of the world's famous pop princesses [prɪn'sesɪz]. But how did she become famous?

Britney grew up in Kentwood, Louisiana [lu:izɪ'ænə], the USA. The girl was born on 2nd December 1981. Even when she was very young, she loved music and singing. She sang popular songs at home and at school, and people said, she had a real talent for singing. The first person who asked Britney to sing for other² people was her mum. And that was a success.



Britney travelled a lot when she was a little girl, but it was difficult for her because she missed³ her friends who were at school in Kentwood. For a year she lived in New York. She studied drama and singing at a school for talented children. When Britney was eleven, she was in a television show the "Mickey Mouse Club" and that was a success too. After the "Mickey Mouse Club", Britney went to Kentwood to go to high school⁴. After high school, Britney started working on her first album "...Baby One More Time". She recorded⁵ it when she was eighteen. It became popular all over the world and in 2000, Britney recorded her second album "Oops!... I Did It Again". In 2001, Britney acted in the film "Crossroads" and recorded her third album.

Now she has got a big house in Beverly Hills and a restaurant in New York. She opened it in June 2002.

Britney always says, "Follow⁶ your dreams! Don't listen to anyone who says you can't be successful!"

¹ in the right order ['ɔ:də] — в правильном порядке

² other ['ʌðə] — другой, другие

³ to miss — *зд.*: скучать

⁴ high school — средняя школа

⁵ to record [rɪ'kɔ:d] — записывать (*на плёнку, пластинку, диск*)

⁶ to follow ['fɒləʊ] — следовать за

9. Complete the chart.

1981	Britney Spears was born.
1992	?
?	Britney Spears recorded her first album.
2000	?
2001	?
2002	?

10. A. Complete the sentences. Speak about Britney Spears.

Britney Spears is a famous American pop ¹ . Britney grew up in ² , Louisiana. She was born on ³ 1981. When she was a little girl, she had a talent for ⁴ . She sang for her mother and other people and that was a ⁵ . Britney travelled in the country and lived in ⁶ for a year. In New York she went to a school for ⁷ . When Britney was eleven, ⁸ the "Mickey Mouse Club". After Britney left high school, she started ⁹ . It became popular ¹⁰ . The name of the second album was "¹¹". In 2001, Britney acted in a film and recorded ¹² . Now Britney lives in ¹³ . She opened a ¹⁴ in New York. Britney likes to say, "Follow ¹⁵!" She knows every person can be ¹⁶ .

B. Role-play a talk with Britney. Try and find as much as you can about her.

Do It on Your Own

11. Write the words in the plural¹ to complete the sentences.

1) There are three new (college) in our town. 2) How many (university) are there in St Petersburg? 3) Those two (woman) are my aunts. 4) I like (animal) and want to become a vet, an animal doctor. 5) A lot of (child) want to leave school and go to university. 6) These are the new (photo). 7) There are three nice (sheep) in the picture. 8) In autumn (goose) fly to warm countries. 9) A lot of zoos have (deer). 10) Moscow is famous for its old (church). 11) My little brother has three white (mouse). 12) If you want to have good (tooth), eat a lot of vegetables and drink a lot of milk. 13) Who are those (man)? I don't know them. 14) (Prince) and (princess) usual-

¹ in the plural [ˈplʊəɹəʃ] — во множественном числе.

ly live in (palace). 15) Look at those beautiful (fish)! Aren't they nice? 16) My (foot) were so tired after the long walk.

12. Write the sentences differently.

Example: This is my new bike. — This new bike is mine.

1) This is her money. 2) These are his books. 3) Those are our rooms. 4) This is your dinner. 5) These are my pets. 6) It's their television show.

13. Check yourself.

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
11	16	
12	6	

Step Five

Do It Together

1. Listen to the text about Roald Dahl, 🎧 (75). Complete the form.

Name	<u>Roald Dahl</u>
Date of birth	_____
Place of birth	_____
Died in	_____
Places of living	<u>Wales,</u>
Began to write for children in	_____
Married in	_____
His wife's occupation	_____
The number of children Dahl had	_____

2. Choose the word. Complete the sentences. Check, 🎧 (76).

Yesterday my mum (gives/gave) me some money. I (want/wanted) to buy a new disc. But when I (come/came) to the shop, I (can't/couldn't) see the money in my bag. It (was/were) not there. "Where (is/are) the money?" I (think/thought). "Where did I put it?" Then

I (understand/understood). "I know where the money (is/are). It (is/was) on the kitchen table."

3. Say the same differently. Check, 🗣️ (77).

Example: The news he told me was terrible. It was terrible news.

- 1) The news they told me was interesting.
- 2) The news they told me was funny.
- 3) The news they told me was boring.
- 4) The news they told me was pleasant.
- 5) The news they told me was wonderful.

4. Look at the pictures and say what colour the people's hair is. Check, 🗣️ (78).



ALICE



JACK



KATE



ANDREW



FREDERIC COLIN

MEMO

В английском языке придаточные определительные предложения могут вводиться относительными местоимениями **who (whom), whose, which**.

The woman who is standing near my mother is my teacher.

The man who/whom I met yesterday was my uncle.

The boy whose name is Jack Hibbs is our best student.

Mr Brown lives in the cottage which name is "Sunny Garden".

The book which I'm reading now is very interesting.

Обратите внимание, что, когда речь идёт о людях, используются местоимения **who (whom)**, когда речь идёт о неодушевлённых предметах и животных (если они не являются нашими любимцами), — **which**. При этом очень часто **which** и **who** опускаются.

This is the book (which) you wanted to read.

This is the man (who) you wanted to see.

Во многих случаях вместо **who** и **which** можно использовать **that**.

This is the book that you wanted to read.

This is the man that you wanted to see.

5. Say the same in Russian.

- 1) This is the car Jack bought. 2) This is the man I know very well.
3) This is the film my mother likes very much. 4) This is the game I can't play. 5) This is the writer I saw on television yesterday.
6) This is the girl we often play with. 7) This is the school I go to.

6. Choose the right word to complete the sentences. Check, 🗣️ (79).

- 1) I don't like people (who/which) hate animals. 2) The question (who/which) you are asking me is very difficult. 3) The children (who/which) are playing in the garden are my brother's friends. 4) The jobs (who/which) he did in his young years were all very interesting. 5) The mice (who/which) live under the floor get out at night. 6) The man (who/which) married my sister is my good friend now. 7) The place (who/which) he visited last summer was very beautiful. 8) The career (who/which) I chose is not very easy. 9) The deer (who/which) live in the forest come to our house, and we feed them. 10) The university (who/which) is in the city centre is the best.

7. Complete the sentences with *who*, *which*, *whose*, *that*.

- 1) The boy ... is playing on the computer is my friend. 2) The story ... I read yesterday was very interesting. 3) The plant ... flowers are red is a rose. 4) The man ... car is in the garden is my cousin. 5) The room ... walls are yellow is the best in the house. 6) The children ... are sitting at their desks are my pupils. 7) The women ... are dancing now are our school teachers. 8) The dog ... is playing with a ball is Chase. 9) The house ... roof is high is my grandfather's. 10) People ... like music often come to this place to listen to it.

8. Answer the journalist's questions. Act out the dialogue.

J. What's your name?

You. _____

J. How old are you?

You. _____

J. Do you go to school?

You. _____

J. What's your school number?

You. _____

J. What year are you in at school?

You. _____

J. How many pupils are there in your class?

You. _____



J. What do they want to do after school?

You. _____

J. And you? What career would you like to choose?

You. _____

J. What do your parents think about it?

You. _____

J. Would you like to go to university or college?

You. _____

J. In what place would you like to live?

You. _____

J. Why?

You. _____

J. I'd like to know if you're happy.

You. _____

J. Thank you very much for the interview.

9. Speak about Korney Chukovsky.

Pen name — Korney Ivanovich Chukovsky

Real¹ name — Nickolay Vasilievich Korneychukov

1882 — born

1901 — chose the career of a writer and critic
[ˈkrɪtɪk], wrote some very good books for
children (children's classics), did trans-
lations [trænsˈleɪʃənz] from English into
Russian

1957 — became Doctor of Philology [fɪˈlɒlədʒi],
had two children (his son and his daugh-
ter later became writers)

1969 — died



10. A. Speak about one of your parents or a man/a woman you know.

When was he/she born?

Where was he/she born?

What was his/her family like?

Where did he/she go to school?

What career did he/she choose?

Did he/she go to college or university?

Does he/she like his/her work?

Is he/she successful in his/her work?

¹ real [rɪəl] — настоящий



What is he/she interested in?

What does he/she do in his/her free time?

B. Work in pairs. Try and find out as much as you can about one of your partner's parents.

11. What is your biography like?

My name

I was born

I'm ... years old.

I live

I have a ... family: ... and me.

My parents

I go to school

I like

I'm interested in

I don't like

I want to go to

I'd like to be

I dream of

Do It on Your Own

12. Write these sentences differently. Use *who* or *which*.

1) I like the video that I bought yesterday. 2) The boy that wrote this poem is my best friend. 3) The dog that is running to the house is Rex. 4) Where is the picture that Uncle Fred painted? 5) Mr Jones is my friend that lives in Canada. 6) The children that live next door are my friends. 7) This is the cake that I made. 8) The girls that are here go to my school.

13. Write these words in the singular¹.

1) mice, 2) teeth, 3) sheep, 4) women, 5) geese, 6) men, 7) deer, 8) fish, 9) children, 10) feet.

14. Check yourself.

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
12	8	
13	10	

¹ in the singular ['sɪŋɡjʊlə] — в единственном числе

UNIT FOUR

Traditions, Holidays, Festivals¹



Step One

Do It Together

1. Listen, (80), and complete the sentences.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1) Do you know the boy | a) which make good pets. |
| 2) Can you see the tall man | b) that is not far from my house. |
| 3) I like little animals | c) who is speaking to our teacher. |
| 4) She lives in the house | d) who is coming to dinner. |
| 5) I like the park | e) who is standing at the window. |
| 6) My brother has a bike | f) whose books are very interesting. |
| 7) Mother often tells me stories | g) whose garden is beautiful. |
| 8) Dahl is the writer | h) which is new and bright yellow. |
| 9) Please tell me | i) that make me smile. |
| 10) Lewis Carroll is the writer | j) whose books I enjoy reading. |

2. Who is who in the pictures? Listen, (81).



1.



2.



3.



4.



5.



6.



7.



8.

¹ Traditions, Holidays, Festivals — традиции, праздники, фестивали

3. Learn how to pronounce and use the new words, (82).



A.

celebrate ['selibreit] — праздновать, отмечать

present ['prezənt] — подарок

neighbour ['neibə] — сосед

midnight ['midnaɪt] — полночь

strike [straɪk] — 1) ударять, бить; 2) бить (о часах)

shout [ʃaʊt] — кричать

quiet ['kwaɪət] — тихий, спокойный

B.

celebrate: to celebrate a holiday, to celebrate a birthday. Jane is celebrating her tenth birthday today.

present: a lot of presents, a birthday present, to give as a present. My mother gave me some money as a birthday present.

neighbour: my new neighbours, my parents' neighbours. Mr Nelson is our neighbour, he lives in the house next to ours.

midnight: at midnight. Twelve o'clock at night is midnight, or the middle of the night. My grandma usually goes to bed at midnight.

strike — struck: 1) to strike in the face. Why did you strike Nick? 2) (about the clock) Listen! The clock is striking midnight. When does the Kremlin Clock strike?

shout: to shout at a child. Why are you shouting? I understand you well. I hate people who shout at children, old people and animals.

quiet: a quiet evening, a quiet life. Be quiet! Ann is sleeping! Jack is a quiet person, he never shouts. I live a very quiet life.

4. Look at the pictures and say:

a) when the children celebrated their birthdays;



1.



2.



3.



4.

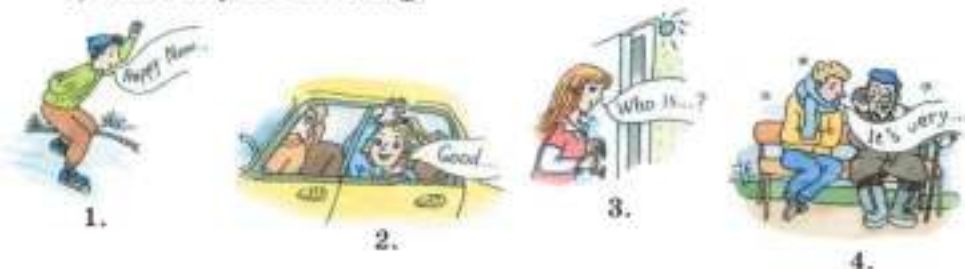
b) what their parents gave them as a birthday present;



c) who are the children's neighbours;



d) what they are shouting;



e) what time their clocks are striking and whose clock is striking midnight.



5. Say what they are doing.



Elizabeth

1



Elizabeth

Roy

2



3



4

MEMO

Помимо известного вам прошедшего простого времени **past simple** (*opened, liked, translated, came, saw*), в английском языке есть ещё одно прошедшее время — **past progressive** (прошедшее продолженное), которое образуется при помощи 1) форм **was, were** (глагол *to be* в **past simple**) и 2) глагола, называющего действие, с **-ing** на конце (*Ving*).

was/were + Ving

Fred was playing on the beach at 5 o'clock yesterday.

We were talking when mother came in.

While¹ I was working, Tom was cooking.

Past progressive часто используется для того, чтобы описать какое-либо действие, которое происходило в определённое время в прошлом.

¹ **while** [waɪl] — в то время как

6. Read the sentences. Which of them are in past simple and which in past progressive?

- 1) While I was speaking on the phone, Don was looking at father's photographs.
- 2) Mr Ross lived in France three years ago.
- 3) I saw Nina last Friday.
- 4) You were sleeping when John came.
- 5) While Bob was feeding the cow, Emma was feeding the chicks.
- 6) Mr Green married Betty five years ago.
- 7) Alan was answering the teacher's question when his parents opened the door.
- 8) Bryan was leaving for London at 5 p.m. yesterday.

7. Listen, (83), and then read the dialogues (1—3). How can we form questions and negations¹ in past progressive?

- 1) — Was Lizzy sleeping when you came into her room, Melissa?
No, Mum. She was not sleeping. She was playing with her doll.
- 2) — Were John and Tom going to school when you met them?
— No, they were not going to school, they were going to the gym.
- 3) — Ann, was Nick playing on the computer at 8 p.m. yesterday?
— No, Granny. He wasn't playing on the computer. He was watching television.



Past Progressive			
+	подлежащее		was/were + Ving I was reading. They were reading.
-	подлежащее		was/were not + Ving wasn't/weren't + Ving He was not (wasn't) reading. We were not (weren't) reading.
?	was/were	подлежащее	Ving Was she reading? Were they reading?

¹ to form questions and negations [n'geiʃənz] — образовать вопросительные и отрицательные предложения

8. Look at the pictures and say what the children were doing and what they were not doing at 11 o'clock a.m. yesterday.

+

-

+

-



+

-

+

-



+

-

+

-



9. What were they doing last Sunday evening? Ask your friends.

Example: Were you playing on the computer?

to watch television, to write a diary, to stay at home,
 to talk to your parents, to go by underground,
 to make a tour of Moscow, to buy a souvenir,
 to speak on the mobile, to have a quiet evening

Do It on Your Own

10. Make up sentences.

- 1) was not he football with us yesterday playing.
- 2) a book at 7 o'clock you reading were ?
- 3) they visiting their grandad were in the evening.
- 4) singing the birds were early in the morning ?
- 5) Ben what yesterday evening doing was ?
- 6) sleeping wasn't at midnight she.
- 7) the teacher to me speaking was ?

11. Complete the sentences. Write about your day.

- 1) At seven o'clock yesterday I
- 2) At seven o'clock yesterday it ... raining.
- 3) When I was coming home from school yesterday, I met
- 4) I was watching television yesterday evening while
- 5) When the clock struck midnight, my family
- 6) While I was doing my homework yesterday, my friends

12. Check yourself.

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
10	7	
11	6	

Step Two

Do It Together

1. A. Listen, (84). What do you hear?

- 1) a) Is Ben playing tennis?
b) Was Ben playing tennis?
- 2) a) Are you talking to your neighbour?
b) Were you talking to your neighbour?
- 3) a) Liza isn't shouting at me.
b) Liza wasn't shouting at me.
- 4) a) The shop is closing.
b) The shop was closing.



- 5) a) What are they celebrating?
b) What were they celebrating?
- 6) a) What present is Sarah buying?
b) What present was Sarah buying?
- 7) a) The clock is striking midnight.
b) The clock was striking midnight.
- 8) a) Who is driving the double-decker?
b) Who was driving the double-decker?
- 9) a) His granny is living a quiet life.
b) His granny was living a quiet life.
- 10) a) The Smiths are choosing a new house.
b) The Smiths were choosing a new house.

B. Role-play the short dialogues as in the example.

Example: — Was Ben playing tennis?
— Did you say, "Is Ben playing tennis?"
— No, I didn't. I said, "Was Ben playing tennis?"

2. Mrs Ford went shopping. What were her children and her pets doing when she came home? Check, (85).

Example: Tim was standing on the television.

stand, play, jump, eat (2), fly, sleep, paint, water, wash, sit



3. Ken had a very bad day yesterday. What did he say to his friend Lizzy about it?

Example: I was taking a shower when my mother called.

- 1) At seven o'clock Ken was in the shower. His mother wanted to speak to him on the phone. He spoke to his mother and went to the bedroom to dress.
- 2) He began to dress. His neighbour came. The neighbour asked some questions about Ken's garden. The neighbour left.
- 3) Ken went to the kitchen to have a cup of tea. His friend came. He asked for some money. Ken gave him the money.
- 4) Ken went to the garage to get out the car. A policeman¹ stopped him. The policeman asked Ken if the neighbour's dog was any problem. Ken said that it wasn't.
- 5) Ken drove to Lizzy's house. His car stopped in the middle of the road. Ken left the car at the service station² and took a bus.
- 6) He was on the bus. It began raining. The bus stopped. Ken got out. He stood at the bus stop because he didn't have an umbrella³.
- 7) When Ken came to Lizzy's place, he was very late and Lizzy was angry.

MEMO

Целый ряд глаголов в английском языке обычно не употребляют в продолженном времени (present или past progressive). Это глаголы like, love, understand, see, hear⁴, want, know, hate, think (в значении «полагать»), have (в значении «иметь») и др.

John likes winter.

I don't understand French.

They see us.

I want a new blouse.

Pete loves his mum.

We don't know these people.

I hear you.

They have a good old friend.

Однако сравните:

What are you doing? — I am thinking.

I think they are having fun at the party now.

¹ a policeman [pə'li:smən] — полицейский

² a service station ['sɜ:vɪs ,steɪʃən] — станция технического обслуживания

³ an umbrella [ʌm'brɛlə] — зонт

⁴ to hear [hɪə] — heard [hɜ:d] — слышать

4. Choose the right form to complete the sentences. Check, (86).



- 1) (Do you love/Are you loving) your home town? 2) Howard says he (doesn't understand/isn't understanding) me. 3) Jack didn't answer my question, he (thought/was thinking). 4) When I met Tom, he (walked/was walking) to the supermarket. 5) My brother (hated/was hating) milk when he was little. 6) We (had/were having) dinner when you called. 7) She (thinks/is thinking) that she is the best pupil in her class. 8) What present (do you want/are you wanting) for your birthday? 9) What television programme (did you watch/were you watching) at 9 o'clock yesterday night? 10) (Did you know/Were you knowing) that Tim was my neighbour? 11) (Did you hear/Were you hearing) when Tom came back? 12) "Think, Jane, think!" — "Oh, Mum, I (am thinking/think)."

5. What do the words mean?

traditional [trə'dɪʃənəl]: Football is a traditional British game.

special ['speʃəl]: My little sister goes to bed late on special days — 31 December, 8 March and her birthday.

public ['pʌblɪk]: I go to the public library on Sundays. I use public transport when I go to school.

club [klʌb]: We have a lot of sports clubs at school: a tennis club, a chess club, a football club.

disco ['diskəʊ]: Disco is a place where people dance to popular music. Do you often go to a disco?

symbol ['sɪmbəl]: A red rose is a symbol of England. What Russian symbols do you know?

start [stɑ:t]: We start at five tomorrow. To start means to begin. Let's make a new start.

6. Learn how to pronounce and use the new words, (87).



- A.**
- | | |
|---|--|
| mean [mi:n] — значить, иметь в виду | card [kɑ:d] — карточка, открытка |
| wish [wɪʃ] — 1) <i>v</i> желать; 2) <i>n</i> — желание | sweetheart ['swi:θɑ:t] — 1) возлюбленный(ая); 2) любовь моя, душа моя (при обращении) |
| gather ['gæðə] — собирать(ся) | hear [hiə] — слышать |
| hug <i>v</i> [hʌg] — обнимать | |
| hug <i>n</i> — объятие | |
| each [i:tʃ] — каждый | |

- B.**
- mean — meant** [ment]: What does this word mean? What did Bob mean when he said it? He meant that you were right.
- wish:** I wish you a happy birthday. We wish you a good trip.
- a wish:** a strong wish. My wish to become a doctor gets stronger every day.
- make a wish:** Look at the star and make a wish.
- gather:** to gather fruit in the garden. All my friends gathered near the school.
- hug — hugged:** to hug your parents, to hug your friends. I hugged my grandparents because I was glad to see them.
- a hug:** a big hug. I gave my dog a big hug when I got home.
- each:** each player, each pupil, each girl, each of us, each of them. Each house in the street has a garden. Each girl has a book. They each have a book. Each of the boys has a book.
- each other:** to see each other, to like each other. The twins love each other.
- card:** a postcard, a greetings card, a playing card, a birthday card, a bank card, to play cards. Beatrice sent me a beautiful card on my birthday.
- sweetheart:** Goodbye, sweetheart. Don't cry, sweetheart. They were sweethearts for three years and then they married.
- hear — heard** [hɜ:d]: Can you hear me? I heard a nice new song yesterday. I can hear the neighbour's television.

7. A. Answer the questions.

- 1) When is your birthday?
- 2) Do you celebrate your birthday every year?
- 3) What do you wish to get for your birthday?
- 4) Do your friends gather at your place on your birthday?
- 5) Do your friends hug or kiss you when they come to say "Happy Birthday"?
- 6) What else does each of your friends say?
- 7) Do you get many birthday cards?
- 8) Do you have any special things to eat on your birthday?
- 9) Do you usually stay at home, or go to a club, or a disco, or another public place?
- 10) Do you enjoy your birthdays?
- 11) When was your best birthday party? What was it like?

B. Work in pairs. Interview your partner using the questions above.

8. Listen. (88). These are the names of some British holidays. Read them. Do you know when people celebrate them? Check. (89).



9. A. Listen to the text. (90). Complete the sentences after it.



HOLIDAYS AND FESTIVALS IN BRITAIN (1)

Who doesn't like holidays? Holidays usually mean not going to school or to work, they also mean nice food, presents and lots of fun.

British people like them too. Here are some of the traditional holidays and festivals they celebrate:

- 1 January — New Year's Day;
- 14 February — St Valentine's Day;
- March or April — Easter Festival;
- 31 October — Halloween;
- 5 November — Guy Fawkes' Night;
- 25 December — Christmas Festival.



The beginning of a new year is a time for celebrating and making a new start. People wish each other "Happy New Year" and send special greetings cards. On New Year's Eve¹ (December 31st) many people go to parties with their families, neighbours and friends. They go to bed after midnight to "see the New Year in" at 12 o'clock. In London people gather to celebrate in Trafalgar

¹ eve [i:v] — канун

Square. From there they can hear Big Ben the large clock at the Houses of Parliament. When Big Ben strikes, they all hug and kiss each other and shout "Happy New Year!". January 1st is a public holiday in Britain and the US. For older people it's a quiet day in front of the television. But young people go out and meet their friends at parties, discos and different clubs.



On St Valentine's Day people send a special greetings card (Valentine) to those who they love. It's a tradition not to give the name of the sender. Some people buy presents for their sweethearts or give them red roses, a symbol of love.

- 1) Holidays usually mean
- 2) Some of the traditional holidays and festivals that British people celebrate are
- 3) The beginning of a year is a time for
- 4) People wish each other ... and send special
- 5) Many people get together with
- 6) In London people gather to celebrate in
- 7) When Big Ben strikes, people
- 8) For older people 1 January is a quiet day
- 9) But young people go out and
- 10) On St Valentine's Day people send
- 11) Some people buy presents for their ... or give them

B. Say what you can about holidays and festivals in Britain.

10. Choose the answer.

- 1) I

a) like holidays.	c) don't like holidays very much.
b) love holidays	d) ...
- 2) On New Year's Eve I

a) do a lot of cooking.	c) write greetings cards.
b) buy presents for my family and friends.	d) ...
- 3) Late at night on 31 December I

a) go to a party.	c) go to bed early.
b) gather my friends at my place.	d) ...

4) On New Year's Day I

- a) stay in bed.
- b) watch television all day.

- c) go out with my friends.
- d) ...

5) To me the New Year means

- a) getting a lot of presents.
- b) eating lots of nice things.

- c) meeting my friends.
- d) ...

Do It on Your Own

11. Complete these sentences.

Example: Jane (cook) when Alice (get up).
Jane was cooking when Alice got up.

- 1) Our friends (gather) in the garden when father (come).
- 2) I (send) a postcard to my granny when I (see) her in the street.
- 3) I (hug) my grandfather when the door (open).
- 4) Mrs Morrison (walk) in the street when she (meet) Sue.
- 5) We (watch) television when Charles (leave).

12. Nick's sister always asks him questions about his day. Write her questions and his answers.

Example: — What were you doing at half past one?
— I was having lunch.



1.



2.



3.



4.



5.



6.

13. Check yourself.

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
11	5	
12	6	

Step Three

Do It Together

1. Listen to the traditional English song "Jingle, Bells!", (91), and sing it along.

JINGLE, BELLS!

Chorus

Jingle, bells! Jingle, bells!
Jingle all the way!
 Oh, what fun it is to ride
In a one-horse open sleigh!

Звоните, бубенчики

в открытых, запряжённых
 одной лошастью санях
 проносятся сквозь снегопад

Dashing through the snow
In a one-horse open sleigh,
O'er the fields we go
Laughing all the way.

по полям
 смеясь всю дорогу

Chorus

Bells on bob-tail ring,

на лошадке с коротко
 подстриженным хвостом
 поднимая настроение

Making spirits bright.

What fun it is to ride and sing
 A sleighing song tonight!

Chorus

2. What were they doing? Check, (92).

Example: While Charles was reading books,
 Sam was watching television.



3. Ask Peter questions and listen to his answers. Check, (93).

Example: We were gathering near my house. (Why)
Why were you gathering near your house?

- 1) I was writing my wishes. (Where)
- 2) I was making a birthday card for Helen. (When)
- 3) We were playing with each other. (Where)
- 4) We were staying at a hotel. (Why)
- 5) I was talking to my teacher. (When)
- 6) I was visiting my granny. (When)
- 7) We were buying a souvenir. (To whom)
- 8) I was meeting Mr Green. (Why)
- 9) We were swimming. (Where)



4. Match the words with the pictures.

- | | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| a) a postcard | c) a bank card | e) a birthday card |
| b) a greetings card | d) a playing card | |



1.



3.



5.



2.



4.

5. What has each of them got?

Example: Each doctor has got a watch.
Each of the doctors has got a watch.



1.



2.



3.



4.



5.



6.



7.



8.

6. Learn how to pronounce and use the new words, (94).



A.

return [rɪ'tɜ:n] — 1) *v* возвра-
щать(ся); 2) *n* возвращение

life [laɪf] — жизнь

death [deθ] — смерть

knock [nɒk] — стучать

blow [bləʊ] — 1) дуть; 2) взры-
вать

kill [kɪl] — убивать

catch [kæʃ] — хватать, ло-
вить

burn [bɜ:n] — жечь, гореть

B.

return: to return to a city, to return books. When does he return from work? When are you going to return the money?

return: a return to work, his return to school.

life — lives: to have a quiet life, all your life. Did James live in Scotland all his life?

death: a terrible death. What do you know about the King's death?

knock: to knock on/at the door. I knocked on/at the door but there was no answer.

blow — blew [blu:]: 1) to blow on the hands. A warm wind is blowing. 2) to blow a bridge, to blow a tower. When they came to the city wall, they blew it.

kill: to kill animals for food, to kill time. Andy went to the park to kill time.

catch — caught [kɔ:t]: to catch a ball, to catch fish, to catch a cold (colds), to catch a bus (train, plane). John can catch a ball with one hand. My dad caught four fish yesterday. In winter she often catches a cold. Did Tony catch the plane?

burn — burnt [bɜ:nt]: to burn leaves, to burn a fire, to burn (the) meat. Jack burnt the fish. I burnt my hand. People often burn yellow, red and brown leaves in autumn.

7. Complete the text. What end can this story have?

On a cold winter night Harris was r... home. The weather was terrible and a strong wind was b... and it was very dark. Harris was coming to his house when he saw a tall man who was k... on Harris's door. "Hello," said Harris. "My name is Harris Porter. I live here. And who are you?" "My name is John Perry. I'm tired and cold. And I'm hungry too. The King's men are after me. They are trying to c... me and k... me. It's the question of l... and d... ." "I see," said Harris. "Let's come into my house. It is warm there. A fire is b... in the fireplace. I think I can help you."

gave John his clothes, put a chair for him at the fireplace, made tea,
 came into the house, told them that John was his brother,
 left the house, made good friends

8. Listen to the text "Holidays and Festivals in Britain", (95). Read the text and match its parts with the names. There are four names but three parts!



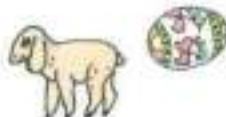
- a) The Day of Dark Spirits
- b) The Day of Bonfires and Fireworks
- c) The Day of New Life
- d) The Day of Wonderful Presents

HOLIDAYS AND FESTIVALS IN BRITAIN (2)

1) ...

Easter Sunday is the day when Christians [ˈkrɪstʃənz] celebrate Christ's [kraɪsts] return to life and victory over death. On this day many people go to church. Children get presents of chocolate Easter eggs. Easter always means spring, new life after winter, flowers, green trees and young animals, especially lambs [læmz] and chicks. Some time ago it was a tradition [trəˈdɪʃən] to make new clothes and hats for Easter.

Пасха, пасхальное;
 христиане
 победа над



особенно ягнята



2) ...

Celebrating Halloween is a very old tradition. Long ago people thought that on 31 October spirits of the dead came back. That's why now some people dress up as witches [ˈwɪtʃɪz] and ghosts [ɡəʊsts]. They make lamps of pumpkins. Sometimes children go out in groups, knock on people's doors and say "Trick or treat". They usually get a treat, some sweets or nuts. People also [ˈɔːlsəʊ] have Halloween parties where they often play games.

что
 духи, души мёртвых
 вот почему
 привидения
 тыквы

угощение
 также



3) ...

Guy Fawkes' Night is on 5 November. That day in 1605 some conspirators [kən'spɪrətəz] wanted to blow up the Houses of Parliament and kill King James I and his ministers. Guy Fawkes was one of them. But they couldn't do that because the King's men caught Guy Fawkes and killed him. Not many people think about those events [ɪ'vents] now but they enjoy celebrating the day with their friends and families. On 5 November when it gets dark, people go out into the streets and watch beautiful fireworks. In the country they often make big bonfires and gather near them.

заговорщики

взорвать

министры



события

становится темно

большие костры



9. Read the text "Holidays and Festivals in Britain" again and complete the sentences.

I.

- 1) At Easter Christians celebrate Christ's ... and victory over
- 2) On this day many people go to
- 3) Children get presents of
- 4) Easter means
- 5) Some time ago it was a tradition to

II.

- 1) Long ago people thought that on 31 October
- 2) Some people dress up as
- 3) They make lamps of
- 4) Sometimes children knock on people's doors and say, "... ."
- 5) People also have Halloween parties where

III.

- 1) Guy Fawkes' Night is on
- 2) That day in 1605 some conspirators
- 3) The King's men

- 4) People enjoy celebrating the day with ...
 5) When it gets dark, people ...
 6) In the country they often make ...

10. Interview your new friend about a British holiday he/she likes most and why.

Do It on Your Own

11. Use *when* or *while*.

1) ... mother returned home from work, I was doing my lessons. 2) ... I was doing my lessons, my little sister was playing with the toys. 3) I was having breakfast ... it began raining. 4) ... granny was cooking, she was talking to her neighbour. 5) ... I was watching television, my brother was reading in his room. 6) ... I came back from the skating-rink, my family were having tea. 7) Sue was gathering apples in the garden ... her friend knocked on the door. 8) John kissed his sweetheart ... she was not looking. 9) ... my dad was fishing, I was making a bonfire. 10) I was dressing ... my sister was making breakfast.

12. Answer the questions.

- 1) When do you usually return home from school? When does your mother (father) return from work?
 2) Why don't people often knock on doors these days? When did you do it last?
 3) How long is a man's (woman's) life in Russia?
 4) When did Peter the Great, the first Russian emperor ['empərə], die? What is the date of his death?
 5) In what season do strong winds usually blow in the place where you live?
 6) Do you often kill time? When did you do that last?
 7) Can you catch a ball with one hand?
 8) Do you often catch colds in autumn? In winter?
 9) Do you sometimes burn hands when you cook?

13. Check yourself.

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
11	10	
12	9	

Step Four

Do It Together

1. a) Put the lines right¹. Then listen to them and check, 🎧 (96).



I.

1. Roses are red
____ Sugar is sweet
____ And so are you
____ Violets are blue



фиалки

II.

1. Lilies are white
____ You are my queen
____ When I am a king
____ Rosemary's green



лилии

розмарин

- b) When do people say these rhymes²:

- on New Year's Day?
- on Guy Fawkes' Night?
- on 31 October, Halloween?
- on Saint Valentine's Day?
- at Easter?

2. Listen to the dialogues, 🎧 (97), read them. Find sentences in past progressive.



I.

- A. Did you enjoy the New Year's Day?
B. Oh, yes. We had a lot of fun.
A. Really? What did you do?
B. We had a party. All my friends gathered in my flat. And you know what?

¹ Put the lines right. — Расположите строчки в нужном порядке.

² a rhyme [raim] — стихок, рифмовка

A. What?

B. I had the biggest surprise [sə'praɪz] of my life.

A. What surprise?

B. When we were dancing, there was a knock on the door and...
Father Frost¹ came in to wish us Happy New Year.

A. Father Frost? Don't be a baby. It couldn't be Father Frost.

B. Of course not. It was my father with a big box of souvenirs.

II.

A. Last November I was staying with some friends in England and we celebrated Guy Fawkes' Night.

B. Oh! How did you do it?

A. We drove to a place near London. There were a lot of people there, they were making a big bonfire. They all were very happy.

B. How interesting! Were there any children?

A. Yes, there were. The children were watching fireworks, playing games and eating nice things.

B. I like it. I think you had a lot of fun.

A. We did!

3. In what seasons do people do these things?

Example: They usually go away on holiday in summer.

When do they

go skiing?

burn old leaves?

buy warm clothes?

gather round the Christmas tree?

choose Easter presents?

stay out in the open air?

catch a cold?

dream of warm sunny days?

give each other Valentine cards?

wish each other a successful school year?

¹ Father Frost — Дед Мороз (frost — мороз)

Сравните формы *past simple* и *past progressive*. Обратите внимание на различия в их употреблении.

Past Simple	Past Progressive
Употребляется, чтобы рассказать о событиях, которые произошли (завершились) в прошлом. Говорящему важно, когда (when) произошло действие	Употребляется, когда говорящему важно подчеркнуть длительность действия и часто его незавершенность
Указания на время: ago, 3 days ago, last, last month, last year, yesterday, in 2002, then...	Указания на время: at 7 o'clock yesterday, when he came, while I was reading...
He drove a lot last summer.	He was driving his car at 7 o'clock last Sunday.
It didn't rain in July.	It wasn't raining when we arrived.
When did you go there?	Where were you going when I saw you?

4. Choose the right form to complete the sentences, (98).

1) Last year my friend (left/was leaving) for St Petersburg.
 2) When my neighbour returned home, I (stood/was standing) at his door.
 3) We didn't go out yesterday because it (rained/was raining).
 4) In the evening I (phoned/was phoning) my cousin to wish him a happy holiday.
 5) Last summer we (left/were leaving) for the Black Sea.
 6) When (did you catch/were you catching) a cold?
 7) While Jane (wrote/was writing) Christmas cards, her mother (cleaned/was cleaning) the flat.
 8) When Don got up, the birds (sang/were singing) in the trees.
 9) I met Ann when we (travelled/were travelling) in the north of Russia.
 10) The child (hugged/was hugging) his grandfather goodbye.



Правильно написать формы глаголов в *past simple* и *past progressive* вам помогут следующие советы.

Past Simple

1. Добавляя **ed** к корню (основе) глагола, помните, что если в глаголе за ударной гласной следует одна согласная, то она удваивается:

hug — hugged; stop — stopped.

2. Если глагол оканчивается на у, а перед ней стоит согласная (try, marry), то у меняется на i, а затем пишется окончание -ed:

try — tried; cry — cried; marry — married.

Если же перед буквой у стоит гласная, то у не меняется:

play — played; stay — stayed.

3. Формы так называемых неправильных глаголов следует запоминать, например: mean — meant, catch — caught, blow — blew, buy — bought (см. таблицу на с. 255—256).

Past Progressive

Прибавляя **ing** к корню (основе) глагола, помните, что:

1) если глагол оканчивается на е (drive), то е опускается, а **ing** прибавляется к основе глагола:

drive — driving; write — writing; make — making;

2) если в глаголе за ударной гласной следует одна согласная, то согласная удваивается:

run — running; hug — hugging; begin — beginning.

Но: become — becoming.

Помните, что в словах на **l** (travel) возможны два варианта написания:

travelling (британский вариант);

traveling (американский вариант);

3) если глагол оканчивается на **ie** (die, lie¹), то **ie** меняется на **y**:
lie — lying; die — dying.

5. Write and read these words in past simple.

Catch, run, lie, hug, marry, blow, stop, cry, die, begin, travel, fly, fry, stay, say, have, become, mean, choose, burn, buy, leave.

6. Complete the sentences in progressive. Write them down.

1) Mother came into my room when I (get) up. 2) We all (enjoy) the New Year meal a lot. 3) The film (begin). Would you like to watch it? 4) Where is mother? — She (buy) some vegetables at the market. 5) What you (put) on the table? A kitten? Take it off now! 6) It was very hot yesterday, we (swim) all afternoon. 7) Peter (begin) to understand some Russian. 8) Why you (cry), little girl? 9) We (play) a new game. Do you want to play with us? 10) Water the

¹ to lie — лгать

tree, it (die) without water. 11) My friend is the boy who (ski) in a bright red cap. 12) What you (say)? I can't hear you.

7. Can you speak about these British holidays and festivals?



1. Christian holiday
Christ's return to life
go to church
presents of chocolate Easter eggs
symbols of Easter
2. old tradition
special greetings card
sweetheart
present
a symbol of love
3. wish each other
Happy New Year
send greetings cards
New Year's Eve
have parties
see the New Year in
Big Ben strikes midnight
shout "Happy New Year"
hug and kiss each other
quiet day
at discos and clubs
4. in 1605
conspirators
blow up the Houses
of Parliament
kill King James I and
his ministers
Guy Fawkes
caught and killed
events of long ago
watch fireworks
make big bonfires

8. Learn how to pronounce and use the new words, (99).

- A.
- | | |
|--|--|
| decorate [ˈdekəreɪt] — укра-
шать, наряжать | prepare [prɪˈpeə] — гото-
вить(ся) |
| before [bɪˈfɔː] — до чего-либо,
перед чем-либо | believe [bɪˈliːv] — верить |
| busy [ˈbɪzi] — 1) занятой;
2) оживлённый | hang [hæŋ] — вешать
(на что-то) |

- B.
- busy**: 1) to be busy. My mother is always busy. She has a lot of things to do; 2) a busy street, a busy town. London is a busy place.



decorate: to decorate a classroom (house, tree), to decorate with nuts. The family decorated the Christmas tree with bright balls and flags.

before: before classes, before breakfast, before lunch, before school. What were you doing before classes yesterday?

prepare: to prepare for supper (tea, dinner). She is in the kitchen preparing the dinner.

believe: to believe the girl. She said she was ill and I believed her. Do you believe his words?

hang — hung [hʌŋ]: to hang a clock on the wall, to hang (up) a coat on a hook. When I came home, dad was hanging the picture on the wall.

9. **A. Answer the questions. Use the new words.**

- 1) When do people usually decorate Christmas trees? When do you do it in your family? Who usually decorates the flat (house)?
- 2) What do you usually do before going to bed on 31 December?
- 3) Who is busier on New Year's Eve, you or your parents? Why?
- 4) What do you prepare as New Year or Christmas presents for your parents?
- 5) Do you believe that Father Frost comes and brings New Year presents for children? If not, when did you stop believing it?
- 6) What do people hang on the Christmas tree when they decorate it? What do you hang on your Christmas tree: toys, lights¹, sweets, nuts, bright balls?

B. Work in pairs. Interview your partner using the questions above.

Do It on Your Own

10. Complete the table.

1		swim		
2				buying
3	обнимать			
4			tried	
5		kiss		

¹ lights [laɪts] — *лд.*: огоньки, лампочки (*на ёлке*)

6			blew	
7				dying
8	кататься на лыжах			
9				catching
10		lie		
11	бежать			
12			put	
13				marrying
14	означать			
15			sent	

11. Complete the text. Use the new words.

In Russia the time b... New Year's Day is very b... . Children d... the New Year trees and h... beautiful balls and toys on it. Their parents p... a big dinner for the family, friends and neighbours. On New Year's Day people get p... and say "H... N... Y..." to each o... .

12. Check yourself.

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
10	45	
11	10	

Step Five

Do It Together

1. Listen to these people, 🎧 (100). What holidays are these people speaking about?

- Lily's Neighbour
- The Gordons
- Tommy Forester

- New Year's Eve
- Easter Sunday
- Guy Fawkes' Night



2. Complete the poem with the words *in*, *at*, then read it and check, (101).



MEET ME IN THE MORNING

Meet me ... the morning.
Meet me ... noon.
Meet me ... September
Or the middle of June.

Meet me ... midnight.
Meet me ... the hall.
Meet me ... the summer.
Meet me ... the fall¹.

Meet me ... the evening.
Meet me ... eight.
I'll meet you² any time you want,
But, please, don't be late.

MEMO

Обратите внимание на употребление предлогов в составе некоторых обстоятельств времени.

at	on	in
three o'clock	Monday	2003
Easter	31 December	January
Christmas	the day	February
noon	a cold evening	March
night	Thursday morning	the evening
midnight	Tuesday night	the morning
	Guy Fawkes' Night	the afternoon
	New Year's Day	
	Saint Valentine's Day	
	New Year's Eve	

¹ fall (AmE) = autumn — осень

² I'll meet you... — Я встречу с тобой...

3. Complete the sentences with the missing words.

- 1) What do you write to your sweetheart ... St Valentine's Day?
2) Jack London, an American writer, was born ... 1876.
3) Are you always at home ... New Year's Eve?
4) ... June it is not very dark in St Petersburg ... night.
5) ... Thursday night all the boys gathered ... the living room.
6) How many classes have you got ... Friday?
7) Let's meet ... the afternoon. — Why ... noon? Let's meet ... the evening.
8) That day ... four o'clock a strong wind was blowing.
9) We usually stay at home ... New Year's Day.
10) Do you give your friends presents ... Easter?
11) ... midnight, when the clock struck twelve, there came a knock on the door.
12) A lot of people go to church ... Christmas, especially ... Christmas Day.

4. Learn how to pronounce and use the new words, 🗣️ (102).



A.

ring [rɪŋ] — 1) *v* звонить;

2) *n* звонок

fireplace ['faɪəpleɪs] — камин

during ['djʊərɪŋ] — в течение

fight [faɪt] — драться,

сражаться

the poor [ruə] — бедные

(люди)

B.

ring — **rang** [ræŋ]: to ring a bell. She went to the door and rang the bell. The telephone is ringing.

ring (up) = to telephone: When can I ring you up?

ring: Can you give me a ring?

fireplace (fire): at the fireplace, to burn a letter in the fireplace.

Have you got a fireplace in your flat?

wet — **wetter** — **(the) wettest**: wet weather, a wet floor. The streets are wet after rain.

during: during the summer (winter etc), during breakfast (supper etc). Bob came in during the film.

fight — **fought**: to fight with each other. She is very ill and the doctors are fighting for her life. I often fought with boys at school.

poor: a poor man, a poor country. Mr Green is poor. His neighbours are even poorer.

the poor: some clothes for the poor; the money for the poor. The poor are people who have very little money.

5. Look at the pictures and say:

a) what Barbara was doing when the telephone rang;



1.



2.



3.



4.



5.



6.

b) in whose houses there is a fireplace;



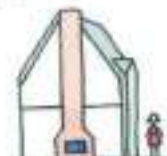
1. JOHN



2. TOM



3. ANDREW



4. MARY



5. SARAH



6. POLLY

c) in what cities the weather was wet;



1.



2.



4.



3.



5.



6.

d) with whom John fought last Saturday;



1.



2.



3.



4.



5.



6.

e) which of them is poor;



Mrs Davidson

1.



Mrs Hobs

2.



Mr Ribbon

3.



Mr Grey

4.



Mr Huxley

5.



Mrs Loveday

6.

f) what the children did during their holidays. Check, (103).



1.



2.



3.



4.



5.



6.

MEMO

Обратите внимание на различие между глаголами **to hear** — *слышать* и **to listen to** — *слушать*. Глагол **to hear** в present и past progressive не употребляется.

I'm listening to you. — Я слушаю тебя.

I hear you well. — Я слышу тебя очень хорошо.

We don't listen to the news on the radio. — Мы не слушаем новости по радио.

We can't hear you. — Мы не слышим вас.

Глагол **to hear** часто сочетается с отрицательной формой модального глагола **can** (can't, couldn't), так же как и глагол **to see**.

We couldn't hear the teacher.

We can't see you.

6. Choose the right word and complete the sentences.

1) My granny is old. She can't (hear/listen to) well. 2) John, why (don't you hear/are you not listening)? 3) Don't shout, Ann. We can (hear/listen to) you well. 4) In the evening my family always (listen to/hear) the news. 5) "(Listen to/Hear) me, please," she said. 6) She can't understand it because she never (listens to/hears) her teacher.





HOLIDAYS AND FESTIVALS IN BRITAIN (3)

People in Britain celebrate Christmas on 25 December. They celebrate it as the day when Jesus ['dʒi:zəs] Christ was born. It is often cold, wet and foggy at Christmas. Families decorate their homes and Christmas trees. The day before Christmas is Christmas Eve. It is a very busy time for families in England. They prepare presents, make Christmas cakes, hang stockings near the fireplace. Children often write letters to Father Christmas with their wishes. They believe that while they are sleeping, Father Christmas comes to visit them. He is a kind old man in red clothes with a big sack¹ of toys. He puts sweets and small toys in the children's stockings.



On Christmas Day everyone² opens presents and sits down to the table to have a big dinner. Families usually have turkey³ or goose with vegetables. After dinner the family gathers in the living room to listen to the Queen of England on television. At teatime in the late afternoon they drink tea with the Christmas cake.



During the holiday carolers go from house to house in the evening. They ring handbells and sing carols, Christmas songs. People give the carolers pies, nuts, fruit or a little money.

The day after Christmas is Boxing Day. But there's no fighting on that day. The name "boxing" comes from the time when people put money for the poor in the church boxes. Then on 26 December the poor got that money. Now people often use this day to give some money to people who helped them during the year.



- 1) In England it is often rainy at Christmas.
- 2) Father Christmas visits children on Christmas Eve.
- 3) On Christmas Day you can hear the Queen of England on television.

¹ a sack — мешок

² everyone ['evriwʌn] — каждый, все

³ a turkey ['tʌki] — индейка

- 4) People eat the Christmas cake on the day after Christmas.
- 5) There are a lot of fights on Boxing Day.
- 6) Boxing Day is the day when the poor go to church.
- 7) People celebrate Christmas on 25 December.

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Why are traditions important for people?

8. A. Complete the text. Check, 🎧 (105).

People in Britain celebrate Christmas on ⁽¹⁾ . December. They believe Jesus Christ ⁽²⁾ on that day. People ⁽³⁾ their homes and Christmas trees. They prepare ⁽⁴⁾ for each other and write special Christmas ⁽⁵⁾ . Children often hang Christmas stockings near the ⁽⁶⁾ and write letters to ⁽⁷⁾ with their wishes. They know that Father Christmas is a kind old man with ⁽⁸⁾ . He puts sweets and small toys in the ⁽⁹⁾ .

On Christmas Day families sit down to have ⁽¹⁰⁾ . Families usually have ⁽¹¹⁾ with vegetables. After dinner they gather in the living room to listen to ⁽¹²⁾ on television.

B. Say how people celebrate Christmas in Britain.

9. Speak about New Year's Eve and New Year's Day in England and in Russia. Use these:

a time for celebrating and for making a new start; wish each other "Happy New Year"; send special greetings cards; go to parties, discos, clubs; go to bed after midnight; "see the New Year in";
listen to/hear the Kremlin Clock; listen to/hear Big Ben;
celebrate with families; friends or neighbours; hug and kiss each other; shout "Happy New Year"; sit down to have a big dinner

Do It on Your Own

10. Complete the sentences.

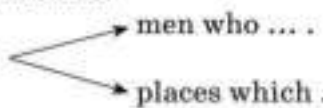
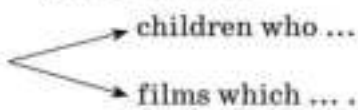
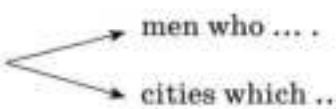
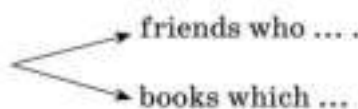
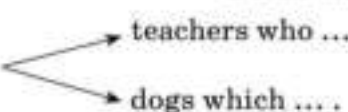
1) When my mum was a little girl, her family decorated the Christmas tree ... nuts, sweets and apples. 2) ... a busy morning of 31 December my mum was preparing a goose ... the party. 3) Alice

always meets me near the school garden ... classes. 4) "Good evening, Boris. Come ..., take ... your coat and hang it ... the hook." 5) ... New Year's Day people are usually very busy. 6) ... midnight, when the clock strikes twelve, we celebrate the New Year. 7) Don't shout ... your little neighbour, be nice to him. 8) Little Sue looked ... her granny and gave her a big hug.

11. What did you do? Write true sentences.

- 1) ... during the day.
- 2) ... during my English class today.
- 3) ... during my winter holidays.
- 4) ... during the school year.
- 5) ... during lunch.
- 6) ... during my first lesson today.

12. Complete the sentences.

- 1) I know 
 - men who ...
 - places which ...
- 2) I'd like to see 
 - children who ...
 - films which ...
- 3) I like 
 - men who ...
 - cities which ...
- 4) I want to have 
 - friends who ...
 - books which ...
- 5) I hate 
 - teachers who ...
 - dogs which ...

13. Check yourself.

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
10	11	
11	6	
12	10	

UNIT FIVE

It's a Beautiful World



Step One

Do It Together

1. A. Listen to the texts, (106). Match the texts and the names.

Text 1 — ?	a) 25 December
Text 2 — ?	b) Easter Sunday
Text 3 — ?	c) Guy Fawkes' Night
Text 4 — ?	d) Queen's Official Birthday (the second Saturday in June)

B. How much do you know about these holidays?

2. A. Listen to the text, (107). Read it. What do the new words mean?

THE QUEEN'S BIRTHDAY

Queen Elizabeth II was born on 21 April 1926. But beginning with 1805 all British Kings and Queens celebrate their **official** [ə'fɪʃəl] birthday on the second Saturday in June.

The weather on this day is usually nice and sunny. The **Royal** ['rɔɪəl] Family watch the **Birthday Parade** [pə'reɪd] from the **balcony** ['bælkəni] of Buckingham Palace in London. The **soldiers** ['sɔʊldʒəz] in beautiful **uniforms** ['ju:nɪfɔ:mz] ride and **march** [mɑ:tʃ] along the Mall [mɔ:l] — a street in central ['sentrəl] London. You can see the Queen too. She rides in front of the soldiers. You can hear music and see bright flags, which fly high in the air.

The parade is very beautiful and a lot of people from all over the world come to watch it. The parade has a name. The name is "Trooping the Colour" because "trooping" means "walking together" and "a colour" means a flag.



B. Answer the questions.

- 1) When is the Queen's real birthday?
- 2) When is her official birthday?
- 3) Where do the soldiers ride and march?
- 4) Where are the Royal Family?
- 5) Where is the Queen?
- 6) Why is the parade beautiful?
- 7) What is the name of the parade?
- 8) Why do they call the Birthday Parade "Trooping the Colour"?

MEMO

Запомните неопределённые местоимения

some	<p>someone } — кто-нибудь, кто-то somebody } something — что-нибудь, что-то</p> <p>⊕ (в утвердительных предложениях)</p> <p>I met someone you know. Somebody came in. There is something on the chair.</p>
any	<p>anyone } — кто-нибудь anybody } anything — что-нибудь</p> <p>⊖ ⊙ (в вопросительных и отрицательных предложениях)</p> <p>Does anyone know it? I didn't see anybody in the garden. We don't understand anything.</p>
no	<p>no one } — никто nobody } nothing [nʌθɪŋ] — ничто</p> <p>⊖ (в отрицательных предложениях)</p> <p>No one was there at 5. Nobody came on time. There is nothing in the box.</p>

every	everyone } — каждый, всякий everybody } everything — всё Everyone knows this. Everybody came to see me. Do you think you know everything?
--------------	--

- Обратите внимание, что местоимения **any (anyone, anybody)** могут обозначать «любой, всякий».

Any child can understand it.
Anybody knows it.
 - Местоимения **some, somebody (someone)** и **something** могут употребляться и в вопросах, когда вопросы по сути являются просьбой или предложением.

Would you like some juice?
Can I have something to eat?
Do you want something hot or something cold?
Can someone help me, please?
3. Complete the sentences. Use *nobody, anybody, something, anything, nothing*.

1) Do you want ... to eat? 2) ... wants to go to the party with me.
3) I didn't understand 4) Was there ... whom I know? 5) There is ... in the garden. You can't see Tom there. 6) Open the box! There is ... in it. Do you like it? 7) I've got ... to do this evening. 8) The party was not a success. ... liked it. 9) Does ... know where you live? 10) There is ... interesting in the book. Read it!

4. Speak about your class. Use (*not*) *everyone, no one, anyone*.

IN MY CLASS

... knows the name of Charlie Chaplin.
... speaks Italian.
... learns to play tennis.
... likes pop music.
... is a good football player.
... can sing or dance.
... plays golf.
... has a pet.
... wants to be a computer programmer.
... goes to the mountains for their holidays.
... is late for the lessons.
... is a good pupil.



Обратите внимание, что в английском языке в предложении может быть только одно отрицание.

No one knows it. — Никто этого не знает.

I don't know anybody here. = I know nobody here. — Я никого здесь не знаю.

We see nothing. = We don't see anything. — Мы ничего не видим.

5. Say the same differently. Check, (108).

Example: We don't hear anybody here. — We hear nobody here.

- 1) I don't know anybody here. 2) I don't think anybody can help us.
 3) I can't see anything. 4) We don't understand anything. 5) We can't buy anything. 6) We haven't got any money. 7) Don't ask anybody to come into the room. 8) Don't talk to anybody here. 9) He doesn't like anything on the menu.



Future¹ Simple

В английском языке будущее простое время образуется при помощи вспомогательных глаголов **shall/will** и инфинитива смыслового глагола без частицы **to**.

I	will/ shall	do it.	We	will/ shall	do it.
He She It	will		You They	will	

It will rain soon.

Jane will be 5 in June.

В современном английском языке вспомогательный глагол обычно сокращается до формы 'll.

I'll see. We'll come. They'll hear.

¹ Future ['fju:ʃə] Simple — будущее простое время



Отрицательная форма **will not** сокращается до **won't** [wɒnt], **shall not** — до **shan't** [ʃɑ:nt].

I won't (shan't) see.

We won't (shan't) come.

You won't come.

He/she won't come.

It won't rain.

They won't come.



В общих вопросах вспомогательный глагол стоит на первом месте.

Will you come? → Yes, I will.

→ No, we won't.

Will they hear? → Yes, they will.

→ No, they won't.

Will she/he see? → Yes, she will.

→ No, he won't.

Will it rain? → Yes, it will.

→ No, it won't.

В специальных вопросах перед вспомогательным глаголом ставится вопросительное слово.

When will you come?

Why will she go?

What will he see?

Who will do it?

Where will they meet?

6. How old will they be next¹ year? Ask and answer the questions.

Example: — How old will Tim be next year?

— Tim will be 20.



TIM - 1998



ANDREW - 1995



SARAH - 2011



KATE - 1958

¹ next [nekst] — следующий



MELISSA-1985



COLIN-2002



BOB-2000



ROY-2009

7. Say what cities and when Bob will visit. Check, (109).



Example: Bob will come to London on 15 April.

15 April — London

23 August — Moscow

28 May — Leeds

22 September — Madrid

3 June — Paris

31 October — Kiev

14 July — Rome

5 November — Glasgow

8. A. Ask Bob when he will go to these places.

Example: When will you go to Blackpool?

Blackpool

Florida

the Lake District

Wales

Disneyland

Poland

St Petersburg

Finland

B. Say what the weather will be like in these places.

Example: It will be sunny and dry in Blackpool.



Blackpool



The Lake District



Disneyland



St Petersburg



Florida



Wales



Poland



Finland

9. What questions did Miss Simpson ask the fortune-teller¹? Check, (110).

- 1) /Larry/I/when/marry/will/?
- 2) /we/will/marry/where/?
- 3) /come to/will/who/the party/?
- 4) /present/Larry/me/will/what/give/?
- 5) /we/have/how many/will/children/?
- 6) /be/will/they/girls/boys/or/?
- 7) /where/we/will/live/?
- 8) /how many/I/have/will/husbands/?
- 9) /die/when/will/I/?
- 10) /I/happy/be/will/?



10. A. Say what you will do and what you won't do next Sunday.

- write a postcard to your granny
- go abroad
- stay in a hotel
- go boating
- go to school
- go to the forest
- buy a mobile
- go to the north/south

¹ a fortune-teller [ˈfɔːtʃənˌtelə] — предсказательница будущего, гадалка

- ski
- have a tour of the Houses of Parliament
- buy souvenirs for your friends
- have lunch in a restaurant
- go to church
- talk to your friends on the phone
- celebrate your birthday
- drive a car
- cook Sunday lunch

B. Work in pairs and find out what your partner will do next Sunday.

Do It on Your Own

- 11. Charles is going to Moscow in August. What will he see there and what won't he see?**





12. Use *anybody/anyone, anything, nobody/no one, nothing, somebody/someone, something, everything* to complete the sentences.

1) There is ... in the garden. Everybody is in the house. 2) Is there ... in the bag? No, there isn't. 3) Is there ... in the classroom? No, there isn't. Everybody is in the hall. 4) There is ... here. I hear that ... is opening the door. 5) Is there ... here who can speak English? 6) I see ... I want to buy. 7) She says she knows ... about him. She doesn't know his address or where he works. 8) ... told me about the party on Saturday night. 9) ... will be OK. You'll see. 10) ... will come to Jane's birthday party. ... likes her.

13. Check yourself.

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
11	11	
12	12	

Step Two

Do It Together

1. Listen to the text and complete it, 🎧 (111).



In Australia, Christmas is different! The weather is ... and sunny — there's no On ... Day, Australians go to the beach and have ... there. They eat cold turkey, ... and Father Christmas goes to the beach and to children. Father Christmas in Australia ... on a surfboard.

2. Use *no one, everybody* or *everything* in these sentences.

1) ... is green and beautiful in spring.

2) ... likes cold and rainy days in autumn.

- 3) ... likes to stay at home on cold winter days.
- 4) ... likes to go to the beach when it is hot and sunny.
- 5) ... is yellow, green and red in an autumn forest.
- 6) ... goes to school in August.
- 7) ... plays games out of doors in rainy weather.
- 8) ... was wet and cold in the rain.
- 9) ... enjoyed the first warm and pleasant day of the year.

MEMO

Вы уже знаете, что по-английски о будущих событиях можно сказать по-разному:

Ann **will be** fourteen on Monday.

Ann **is going to be** fourteen on Monday.

Однако, если решение сделать что-то в будущем принимается в момент речи, употребляется только **future simple**:

This is a very good book. I think I'll buy it.

Оборот **to be going to** употребляется в том случае, если а) решение сделать что-то принято заранее или если б) налицо есть явные признаки того, что какое-то событие обязательно произойдет в будущем.

a) There is no bread at home, I am going to buy it after school.

b) Look at the clouds! It's going to rain.

Очень часто в таких случаях (особенно с глаголами движения **to come, to go, to travel**) используется время **present progressive**:

What time are you meeting Ann?

What time are you going to meet Ann?

I'm travelling to France on Tuesday.

I'm going to travel to France on Tuesday.

3. Look at the pictures and say what is going to happen¹.

Example: He is going to fall.

1) to be ill

2) to be rich²

3) to be late

4) to be happy

5) to be tired

6) to rain

7) to have wonderful weather

8) to become a doctor

¹ to happen ['hæpən] — случаться

² rich [rɪʃ] — богатый



1.



2.



3.



4.



5.



6.



7.



8.

4. Ask and answer questions about Sam.

Example: — When is Sam going to Paris?
 — He is going to Paris on 15 June.

MONTHLY PLANNER

June

1 —	9 weekend at Brighton
2 meet Tom Kelly	10 restaurant with Polly
3 bank 11 – 12 a. m.	11 —
4 Jim's birthday, phone	12 business lunch at the Savoy
5 Manchester, 10 o'clock train	13 —
6 —	14 baseball match 7 p.m. Richmond
7 Jane's party	15 Paris. Flight AF 1589 7 p. m.
8 weekend at Brighton	16 —

5. Complete these sentences. Use *will* or *won't*.

Example: I'm very tired. I think ...

I'm very tired. I think I'll go to bed.

- 1) I'm very hungry. I think ...
- 2) I'm thirsty. I think ...
- 3) All my friends are going to the cinema. I think ...
- 4) I know the party will be boring. I ...
- 5) My birthday is coming. I ...
- 6) If there is no tea and no coffee, I ...
- 7) If I can't go to London, I ...
- 8) If the weather is bad, I ...
- 9) I don't like this song, I ...
- 10) If you have vanilla ice cream and chocolate ice cream, I ...
- 11) I'll be busy in the evening, I ...
- 12) It's going to rain, I ...

6. What do these words mean, (112)?

temperature [ˈtempərəʃə]: What's the temperature today? Is it very cold?

snowman [ˈsnəʊmæn] — **snowmen**: In winter children like to make snowmen. I made a snowman with a long nose. It was very funny.

7. Learn how to pronounce and use the new words, (113).

A.

degree [diˈɡri:] — градус

snow [snəʊ] *v* — идти (о снеге)

spend [spend] — проводить (время)

skate [sket] — 1) *n* конёк;

2) *v* кататься на коньках

tomorrow [təˈmɒrəʊ] — завтра

hill [hɪl] — холм, невысокая горка

shine [ʃaɪn] — светить(ся)

sunshine [ˈsʌnʃaɪn] — солнечный свет

be over [ˈəʊvə] — заканчиваться

B.

degree: five degrees of frost, ten degrees hotter, at the temperature of five degrees. They say the temperature will be ten degrees colder on Sunday.

snow: Look! It is snowing. It often snows in winter. Do you think it will snow on Saturday? It was snowing when John was leaving for London.

spend — **spent** [spent]: to spend money on books, to spend time, to spend the weekend. The Browns spent a week in Spain. Where do you usually spend your holidays?

skate: skates, roller skates. Mum bought me roller skates last Friday.

skate: to skate well, to skate badly, to roller-skate. Can you skate?

go skating: In Russia people often go skiing and skating in winter.

skateboard: to ride on a skateboard. I'd like to have a good skateboard.

tomorrow: We'll go boating tomorrow. Jane says she is leaving for Kursk tomorrow. Polly and Jack are going to see the Hermitage tomorrow.

hill: low hills, high hills, on the hill, in the hills, up and down the hill. In summer we often walked in the hills. They say that Moscow stands on seven hills.

uphill: It's always difficult to walk uphill.

downhill: to ski downhill, downhill skiing. I like downhill skiing more than cross-country¹ skiing.

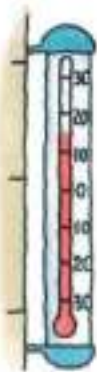
shine — shone [ʃɒn]: the sun shines. The sun shone brightly yesterday. Will the sun shine tomorrow? Is the sun shining now?

shine (n): the shine of the sun — sunshine. He liked to sit in the sunshine on a low bench. We have a lot of sunshine in July but little sunshine in January.

be over: the time is over, the film is over, the lesson is over. The holidays were over and we returned home. When will the class be over?

next: next summer, next Sunday, next week. We are going to the zoo next Saturday. I'll phone you next week.

8. Learn to speak about the temperature, 🗣️ (114).



+15° — It's fifteen degrees above [ə'baʊ] zero ['ziərəʊ].

+10° — It's ten degrees above zero.

+5° — It's five degrees above zero.

0° — It's zero degrees.

-5° — It's five degrees below [bi'ləʊ] zero.

-10° — It's ten degrees below zero.

-15° — It's fifteen degrees below zero.

It's fifteen degrees of frost.

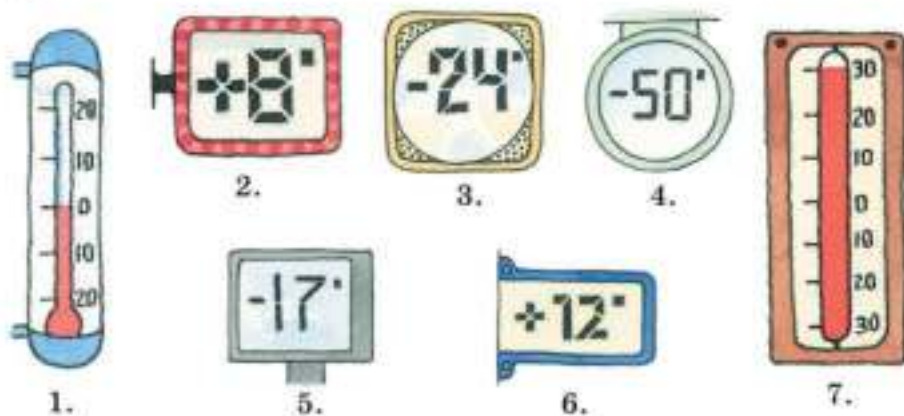


¹ cross-country ['krɒskʌntri] skiing — катание на лыжах по равнинной местности (норвежский стиль)

9. What is the temperature?

- a) $+23^{\circ}$ -14° $+13^{\circ}$ -19° -2°
 0° $+36^{\circ}$ $+4^{\circ}$ -44° $+27^{\circ}$

b)



Температуру можно измерять, используя разные шкалы. В большинстве европейских стран и Великобритании температуру измеряют по шкале Цельсия (Celsius ['selsiəs], или Centigrade ['sentigræd]) (на письме C). Согласно этой шкале, вода замерзает при 0° и закипает при 100° .

В США используют шкалу Фаренгейта (Fahrenheit ['færənhaɪt]) (на письме F). По шкале Фаренгейта вода замерзает при 32° и закипает при 212° . Нормальная температура тела по шкале Фаренгейта приблизительно 98° F.

10. Answer the questions.

A. Where will Nick spend his holidays?

June — sea camp

July — abroad

August — granny's country house.

B. Where will you spend your spring and summer holidays?

C. How will Jane spend her money tomorrow?

Example: Jane will spend her money on cinema tickets tomorrow.



D. What will the children do when their classes are over?

Example: When the classes are over, Rob will go skiing.



E. Where will they go next Sunday?

Example: Jane likes animals. She'll go to the zoo.

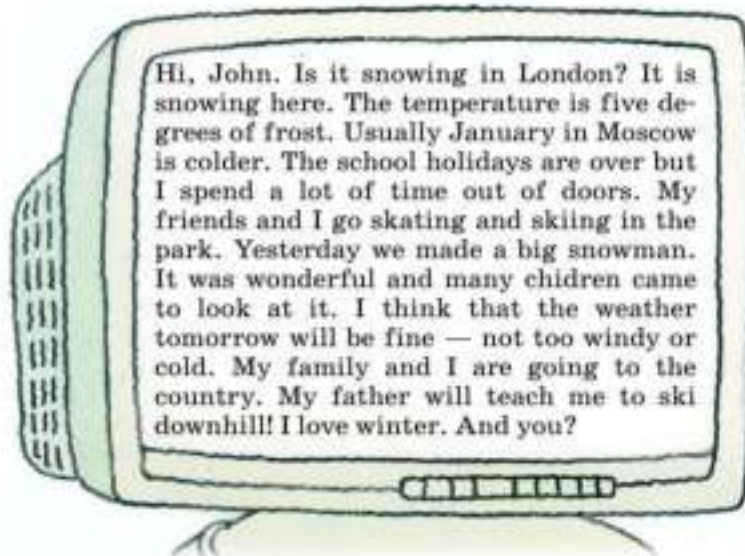
- | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1) Jim likes new films. | 5) Ron likes swimming. |
| 2) Sarah likes good food. | 6) Don likes skating. |
| 3) Nina likes meeting friends. | 7) Grace likes shopping. |
| 4) Kate likes flowers. | 8) I like ... |

F. How much sunshine do these people have in November and in March?

People in	Moscow	have	a lot of	sunshine	in November. in March.
	Murmansk		little		
	Sidney (Australia)		not very		
	London		much		
	Miami		nearly ¹ no		
	Helsinki		very little		
	Delhi		very much		

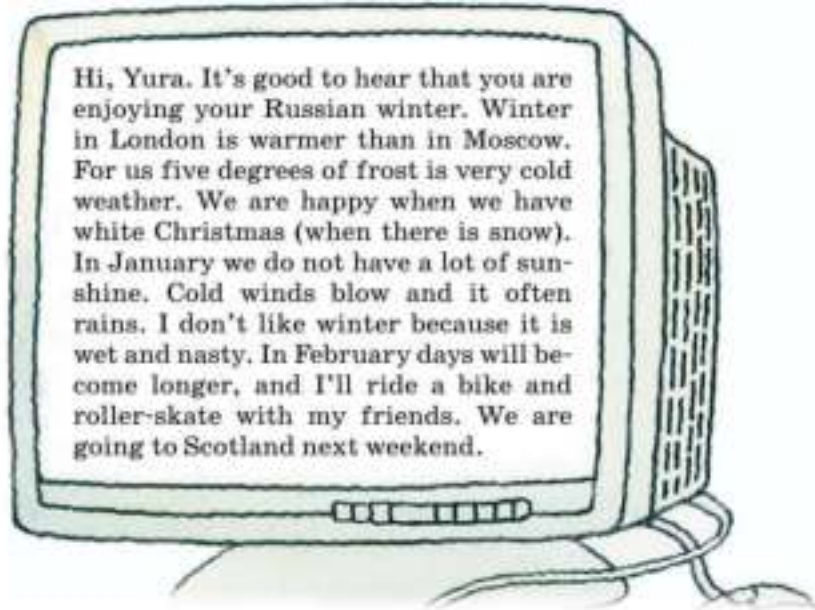
11. A. Read the text. Say what the two boys think about winter.

CHATTING ONLINE²



¹ nearly ['ni:li] — почти, практически

² chatting online — интерактивное общение (разговор в Интернете)



Hi, Yura. It's good to hear that you are enjoying your Russian winter. Winter in London is warmer than in Moscow. For us five degrees of frost is very cold weather. We are happy when we have white Christmas (when there is snow). In January we do not have a lot of sunshine. Cold winds blow and it often rains. I don't like winter because it is wet and nasty. In February days will become longer, and I'll ride a bike and roller-skate with my friends. We are going to Scotland next weekend.

B. Read the text again and complete these sentences.

- 1) Winter in Moscow is
- 2) Winter in London is
- 3) It is snowing
- 4) made a big snowman.
- 5) ... enjoys winter.
- 6) ... five degrees of frost is a cold winter.
- 7) It often rains in winter in
- 8) It often snows in winter
- 9) ... doesn't like winter.
- 10) ... days will become longer.



Do It on Your Own

12. Write an e-mail about winter in your place.

snows much?
rains much?
cold days?

usual temperature?
much sunshine?
cold winds?

time out of doors?
go skating?
go skiing?

do cross-country skiing?
ski downhill?
make snowmen?

13. Write about tomorrow.

- 1) Tomorrow morning I will
- 2) Tomorrow afternoon I am going
- 3) When the classes are over, I will
- 4) Tomorrow evening I am going
- 5) Tomorrow night¹ I will

14. Check yourself.

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
12	12	
13	5	

Step Three

Do It Together

1. What are they doing tomorrow, Ⓢ (115).

- | | | |
|---|------|-----|
| 1) Jeff is skiing. | Yes? | No? |
| 2) Margo is playing basketball. | Yes? | No? |
| 3) Chris is going abroad. | Yes? | No? |
| 4) Sam is roller-skating with his friends. | Yes? | No? |
| 5) Charley is going to a birthday party. | Yes? | No? |
| 6) Samantha is going to the museum. | Yes? | No? |
| 7) Don is working in the garden. | Yes? | No? |
| 8) Mr Norris is returning to Oxford. | Yes? | No? |
| 9) Mrs Norris is staying in London. | Yes? | No? |
| 10) Michael is spending the day with his parents. | Yes? | No? |

¹ night — *ночь*; *вечер*



2. A. What is the weather like in these places now? Use these: *It is snowing...*; *It is raining...*; *The sun is shining...*



B. What will the weather be like in these places tomorrow? Use these: *It will snow...*; *It will rain...*; *The sun will shine...*





YOU'RE MY SUNSHINE

You're my sunshine,
My only sunshine.

You make me happy,
When the skies are grey.

You'll never know, dear,
How much I love you.
Please don't take my sunshine away!

(Two times)

MEMO

Существует правило, что в придаточных предложениях времени и условия будущее время с **will** не употребляется. Вместо него используются формы настоящего времени.

Сравните:

Когда Джейн **придѣт** домой, я позвоню тебе. — When Jane **comes** home, I'll call you.

Если ты **поедешь** в Лондон, сходи в Британский музей. — If you **go** to London, visit the British Museum.

Если **не пойдѣт** дождь, мы будем кататься на лодке. — If it **doesn't rain**, we'll go boating.

4. Match the parts¹ of the sentences.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1) When we have a party, | a) the sun shines brightly. |
| 2) If you come to Moscow, | b) people feel happier. |
| 3) If the weather is good, | c) they'll spend the day at home. |
| 4) When summer comes, | d) he will tell you one more. |
| 5) If it rains again, | e) they'll sunbathe. |
| 6) When we go skating, | f) we'll dance a lot. |
| 7) When the sun shines, | g) the children will play games. |
| 8) If you like his story, | h) give them something to eat. |
| 9) When the lesson is over, | i) we will take you with us. |
| 10) If they are hungry, | j) you can stay with us. |
| 11) If it doesn't snow, | k) they won't have white Christmas. |




¹ a part [pɑ:t] — часть

5. Complete the sentences. Use *if* or *when*.

- 1) I'll phone you ... (come to St Petersburg).
- 2) You'll be tired ... (don't go to bed now).
- 3) I'll stay with the baby ... (go to the cinema).
- 4) We'll have dinner together ... (come home).
- 5) The friends will go to the dancing club ... (have money).
- 6) We can ski ... (snow).
- 7) You can watch television ... (have time in the evening).
- 8) She will sing for you ... (ask her).
- 9) I'll sunbathe ... (be sunny).
- 10) It'll be warm ... (shine).

6. What will they do?

Example: If it snows, they will make a snowman.

- 1) If it snows, they 
- 2) If it rains, 
- 3) If it's cold, 
- 4) If it's hot, 
- 5) If the weather changes, 
- 6) If the wind changes, 
- 7) If it's not foggy, 
- 8) If the sun shines brightly, 



A.

cross [krɒs] — пересекать
(улицу, мост и т. д.)

sunbathe ['sʌnbæθ] — загорать

real [riəl] — настоящий, действительный

really — действительно

heavy ['hevi] — тяжёлый

heavily ['hevili] — сильно

hope [həʊp] — 1) *v* надеяться;
2) *n* надежда

change [tʃeɪndʒ] — менять, изменяться

win [wɪn] — выигрывать

B.

cross: to cross the bridge, to cross the river, to cross the street.

How can we get to the post office? — Cross the bridge and you'll see it.

sunbathe: to sunbathe on the sand, to sunbathe on the beach. It is better to sunbathe in the morning before twelve.

real: real winter, real friend. We spent August in the mountains. That was a real holiday.

really: a) It is really difficult to learn to skate. b) I came home at five. — Really?

heavy: a heavy stone, a heavy box. Your bag is heavy, but mine is heavier.

heavily: to rain heavily, to snow heavily. It snowed heavily yesterday. It was raining heavily when we left the house.

hope: to hope for good holidays, to hope to go abroad, to hope for the best. I hoped to come back at seven.

change: to change a flat, to change money, to change trains. We're going to change our hotel. When did they change their car?

win — won [wɒn]: to win a game, to win a match¹. Do you think we'll win the game?

8. A. What did you do?

a) last winter holidays

b) last summer holidays

B. What was the weather like when you were leaving home this morning?

a) to shine brightly

c) to snow heavily

b) to rain heavily

d) ...

¹ a match [mætʃ] — матч

9. What do they hope for?

Example: Alan hopes to win the game.



to win
the game



to become
a doctor



to know
English well



to travel about
England in spring



to visit Italy in summer



to see the queen



to be happy

MEMO

Наречие *so* [səʊ] в английском языке часто употребляется для усиления:

I am *so* happy. — Я так счастлива.

It was *so* frosty yesterday. — Вчера было так морозно.

10. Use *so* in these sentences.

Example: Jim has got many friends.
Jim has got *so* many friends.

1) Bees are small.

2) It was beautiful last autumn.

3) My bedroom will be cosy.

4) Last summer was dry.

5) Jane is ill.

6) Bobby's room was messy.

7) Last August was rainy.

8) Our classroom will be light

9) The winter is wonderful.

10) Alice's bag was heavy.

11. Listen, (118), and read. Show these places on the map.

Belgium — (1) Brussels ['brʌsəlz]

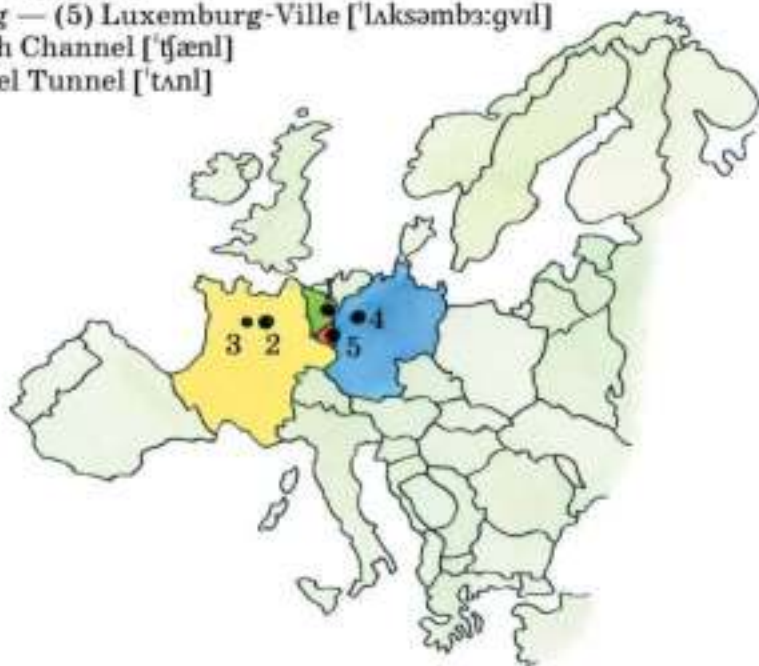
France — (2) Paris, the Louvre ['lu:vʀə], (3) Versailles [veə'sai]

Germany — (4) Bonn

Luxemburg — (5) Luxemburg-Ville ['lʌksəmbə:gvɪl]

The English Channel ['tʃænl]

The Channel Tunnel ['tʌnl]



2. A. John Barker is on a school trip to Europe. He is sending cards to his friend Yura. Read his cards and show the places he visits on the map.

JOHN'S EASTER HOLIDAYS

a)

London

15 April

Hello!

Easter holidays are here and I am going on a tour with my class. Tomorrow we are crossing the English Channel by the Channel Tunnel and going to Paris by bus. We are going to stay in Paris for a day and visit the Louvre. If the weather is fine and it does not rain, we'll go to the city of Versailles to look at the palace and the gardens. I'll write you a card from France.

Bye,

John

b)

Luxemburg-Ville

18 April

Hi, Yura,

I am writing from Luxemburg. Paris was wonderful. It was so hot and sunny that we sunbathed in the park. The Louvre was not bad, but I don't really like picture galleries. Most of all I enjoyed going up the Eiffel Tower. I took some pictures of Paris and the Versailles gardens. If the pictures come out all right, I'll send you some.

Luxemburg-Ville is a very interesting city. There are flowers everywhere. We are staying in a good old hotel. There is little to do because it is raining heavily. Tomorrow we are going to Bonn. I hope it won't rain there.

John

c)

Bonn

19 April

Hello!

Bonn is cold and wet. We went about the city in a bus and got out only to have lunch at McDonald's. Bonn is a beautiful city with old cathedrals, but it looks so grey in the rain! We are leaving tomorrow to go to Brussels. We all miss the sunshine we had in Paris. I hope the weather will change soon.

John

d)

Brussels

21 April

It is the last day of our trip. We are returning to London tomorrow. The sun is shining brightly again and everyone is happier than in Germany. Brussels is a busy place. Most of all we liked the Brussels cakes which we had in an open-air café. Tonight we are going to see a football match between Belgium and Scotland. We will all shout for Scotland. If it wins, we'll have a party and have crisps, cakes and Coke. I am really enjoying it.

John

14. Check yourself.

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
13	8	

Step Four

Do It Together

1. A. Listen to the story "The Wind and the Sun", (119). Before you listen learn these:



a coat



have a coat on



take off the coat

make somebody take off the coat — заставить кого-то снять пальто

B. Who said it — the Sun or the Wind?

- 1) "Let's see who is right."
- 2) "Can you make him take off his coat?"
- 3) "I'll show you that I am stronger."
- 4) "I can't do it."

C. What is the moral of the story?

- 1) The Sun always wins.
- 2) Kindness¹ is better than force².
- 3) Man likes the sun more than he likes the wind.

¹ kindness ['kaɪndnəs] — доброта

² force [fɔ:s] — сила



2. When will Rachel do it?

- 1) Rachel will get up when the clock ... (to strike 7).
- 2) Rachel will have breakfast when her mother ... (cook it).
- 3) Rachel will go to school when she ... (to be ready).
- 4) Rachel will go to a swimming pool when her classes ... (to be over).
- 5) Rachel will go shopping when her mother ... (to come home).
- 6) Rachel will speak to Jim when he ... (to visit her).
- 7) Rachel will read the Harry Potter books when she ... (to buy them).

3. On what condition¹ will they do it?

- | | |
|---|----------------------|
| 1) Sandy will go boating if the weather ... | to be good. |
| 2) Sandy will go to the Lake District if it ... | not to rain. |
| 3) David will make a snowman if it ... | to snow. |
| 4) Mary will chat online with Peter if her parents ... | to buy a computer. |
| 5) Boris will ski downhill if it ... | not to snow heavily. |
| 6) The weather will be warm if the sun ... | to shine brightly. |
| 7) Polly will spend a lot of time outdoors if the weather ... | not to be rainy. |

MEMO

Придаточные времени и условия не следует путать с придаточными изъяснительными. В придаточных времени и условия глаголы в форме **future simple** не употребляются, а в изъяснительных придаточных будущее время часто встречается. Сравните:

1. Я позвоню тебе (когда?), *когда папа вернётся*. (придаточное времени)

I'll call you when father **comes** back.

Я не знаю (чего?), *когда папа вернётся*. (изъяснительное придаточное)

I don't know when father **will come** back.

2. Они купят новую машину (при каком условии?), *если у них будут деньги*. (придаточное условия)

They'll buy a new car if they **have** money.

Я не знаю (чего?), *будут ли у них деньги*. (придаточное изъяснительное)

I don't know if they **will have** money.

¹ on what condition [kən'diʃən] — при каком условии

4. Complete the sentences.

- 1) I'd like to know when (we go/we'll go) to the sea next summer.
- 2) I'll come to your party if (I am/I'll be) in town tomorrow.
- 3) Do you know if next Sunday (is/will be) warm?
- 4) What will you do when summer (comes/will come)?
- 5) Jane says that she will take bus when she (goes/will go) to Oxford.
- 6) If they (like/will like) it at the hotel, they will tell us about it in a letter.
- 7) Please call me when the film (is/will be) over.
- 8) If the child (hears/will hear) your bedtime story, he will sleep better.
- 9) I'd like to know if they (stay/will stay) in Moscow or (go/will go) to St Petersburg.

5. Learn how to pronounce and use the new words, 🗣️ (120).

A.

season ['si:zn] — время года
favourite ['feivərit] — любимый
leaf [li:f] — лист
tasty ['teisti] — вкусный

ripe [raip] — зрелый, спелый
juicy ['dʒu:si] — сочный
different ['difərənt] — другой, разный, различный

B.

season: a cold season, a warm season. There are four seasons in a year. Which season do you like more than summer?

favourite: a favourite season, a favourite song, a favourite sport. Jack likes hockey very much. It's his favourite sport. Autumn was A. Pushkin's favourite season.

leaf — leaves: a green leaf, yellow leaves. There are a lot of red and yellow leaves in autumn.

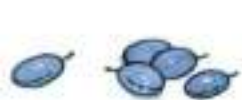
tasty: a tasty pie, a tasty orange, tasty fruit. Mum bought some tasty cakes yesterday.

ripe: a ripe apple, ripe vegetables. I like oranges when they are ripe.

juicy: ripe, juicy fruit, juicy apples. We all like juicy fruit.

different: a different answer, a different hat, to be different. Jim is different from Bob. I would like to read a different book.

6. A. Listen, (121), and read the words.



a plum — plums



a pear — pears



a potato — potatoes



a cabbage — cabbages



a mushroom — mushrooms



a grape — grapes

B. In what months can you see these vegetables and fruit in our gardens?

Example: We can see apples in August and September.



C. Give the name of your

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------|
| 1) favourite fruit; | 4) favourite book; |
| 2) favourite vegetable; | 5) favourite sport; |
| 3) favourite colour; | 6) favourite film. |

7. What is not right here?

- 1) Mushrooms grow on the trees.
- 2) Potatoes came from Italy.
- 3) Pears can't grow in hot countries.
- 4) Grapes are never juicy.
- 5) Plums can be of different colours.
- 6) You can't make a salad from fruit.

- 7) Plums have stones¹, apples do not.
 8) Cabbages are always green.
 9) Plums are green when they are ripe.

8. A. Match the parts of the text with their names. There are three parts but four names.

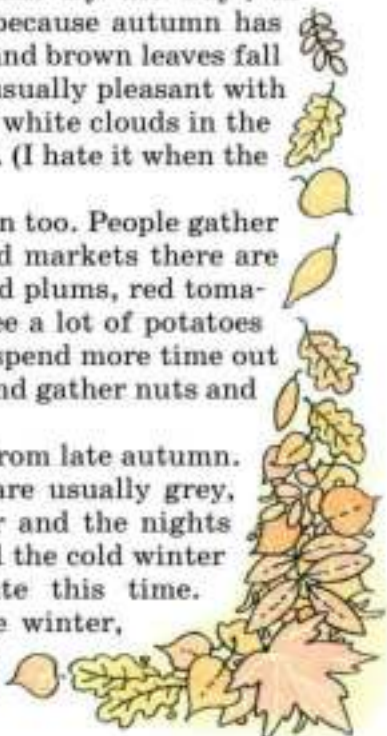
- 1) Autumn, the Terrible
 2) The Season of Fruit and Vegetables
 3) Autumn, the Beautiful
 4) A Day in Autumn

AUTUMN

a) My favourite season is autumn. By the way², in America they call it "fall". I like it because autumn has a lot of colours. Red, yellow, orange, and brown leaves fall down from the trees. The weather is usually pleasant with a warm nice breeze blowing and a few white clouds in the blue sky. The sun is not hot any more³. (I hate it when the weather is hot!)

b) Early autumn is a "tasty" season too. People gather vegetables and fruit. In the shops and markets there are ripe apples and pears, juicy grapes and plums, red tomatoes and green cucumbers, you can see a lot of potatoes and cabbages too. Everybody tries to spend more time out of doors. They often go to the forest and gather nuts and mushrooms there.

c) But early autumn is different from late autumn. The days in October and November are usually grey, rainy, and cold. They become shorter and the nights longer. Birds fly to the south to spend the cold winter months there. A lot of people hate this time. But I don't. I know that after white winter, green spring and summer, which is bright, my favourite season with its Indian summer⁴ will come again.



B. Listen to the text "Autumn", (122), and then read it.

¹ a stone — зёр.: косточка
² by the way — между прочим
³ any more — больше не
⁴ Indian summer — бабье лето



9. Say why autumn

- 1) is a "tasty" season;
- 2) has a lot of colours;
- 3) can be a very pleasant season;
- 4) can be a nasty season.

10. Say why you like (dislike) autumn.

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

What makes this world beautiful? How can we make it better?

Do It on Your Own

11. Write the names of these fruit and vegetables.



12. Match the parts of the sentences and write them down.

- 1) I don't know if
- 2) They will go to the beach if
- 3) Nick will buy some potatoes when
- 4) Ask Alice when
- 5) If the sky is grey,
- 6) When autumn comes,
- a) it doesn't rain.
- b) he goes to the supermarket.
- c) he will go to France.
- d) they will stay at home.
- e) she will go to the skating rink.
- f) the leaves will fall down.

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
11	12	
12	6	

Step Five

Do It Together

1. Read the poem and complete it with the names of seasons. Check, (123). Read the poem aloud.



WHO LOVES THE TREES BEST?



Who loves the trees best?

"I," said ...

"Green leaves so beautiful
To them I bring¹."

Who loves the trees best?

"I," ... said,

"I give them flowers,
White, yellow and red."

Who loves the trees best?

"I," ... said,

"I give them ripe fruits,
Golden² and red."



Who loves the trees best?

"I love them best,"

Cold ... said,
"I give them a rest³."



2. A. Each season is wonderful. Can you say why?

Spring is wonderful because...

Summer... Winter...

Autumn...

¹ to bring [brɪŋ] — приносить

² golden ['gəʊldən] — золотой

³ a rest [rest] — отдых, покой

B. And what makes them not pleasant?

Spring is unpleasant because...

Summer... Winter...

Autumn...

3. A. Listen to the dialogue and act it out, (124).

GOING AWAY FOR HOLIDAYS

- You know what? I'm going away tomorrow.
- Really? Where are you going?
- I'm going to Spain for holidays. I hate late autumn with its rain and winds. I always go away to where it's warm.
- I am glad for you. I hope you'll enjoy the sunshine in Spain. Where are you going to stay?
- At a seaside hotel in Malaga ['mælægə]. I'm going to sunbathe and swim in the sea, get much sleep and walk a lot.
- It's wonderful! Enjoy it and have fun. I'll see you later, when you return.
- I'll send you a postcard from Spain.
- Thank you.

B. Make up one more dialogue about going away to Finland in winter. Act it out.

4. Speak about your favourite season.

What season is it?

What makes it beautiful?

What makes it pleasant?

What can you do in this season?

What can you enjoy in this season?

What holidays do people celebrate in this season?

5. Listen to the song, (125), and sing it along.

She'll be coming round the mountain when she comes,
She'll be coming round the mountain when she comes,
She'll be coming round the mountain,
She'll be coming round the mountain,
She'll be coming round the mountain when she comes.
She'll be driving six white horses when she comes,
She'll be driving six white horses when she comes,

Oh, we'll all go out to meet her when she comes,
Oh, we'll all go out to meet her when she comes,
And we'll all have sweets and pudding when she comes.

MEMO

Кроме слова **when**, придаточные предложения времени могут вводиться и другими наречиями, например **before**, **after**, **until** (до тех пор, пока) или **as soon as** (как только). Правило при этом остаётся неизменным: будущее время в таких придаточных предложениях не используется.

Например:

I'll call you **before** you go to the shops.
We'll meet **after** the classes are over.
They'll stay at the hotel **until** autumn begins.
She'll go for a walk **as soon as** it stops raining.

6. Ask and answer the questions.

What	after	the school is over in May?
will	before	your parents return home from work today?
you	until	you are 16?
do	as soon as	you finish school?
		you have money to spend?

7. Some of these sentences aren't right. Correct¹ them.

- 1) I don't know if Mike will stay with us or not.
- 2) If she will play the game, she will win. She's very good at tennis.
- 3) These children will be seven when September comes.
- 4) We won't go skating if it will be very cold.
- 5) I'll call you as soon as the film will be over.
- 6) I'd like to know if you'll come to the party.
- 7) After they'll buy the food, they'll begin cooking.
- 8) Write to me if you come to Moscow next summer.
- 9) Stay here until I return from the bank.
- 10) Before summer will come, we won't leave the city for the sea.
- 11) Don't go out if it rains.
- 12) When autumn will come, the leaves will start falling from the trees.

¹ to correct [kə'rekt] — исправлять

Предлагая помощь, спрашивая, стоит ли что-то сделать, англичане часто пользуются конструкцией **Shall I...?**

Shall I open the window? — Открыть окно?

Shall I cook dinner? — Приготовить обед?

8. Help Mrs Green. Offer¹ to do these things.

Example: Shall I go shopping?



1.



2.



3.



4.



5.



6.



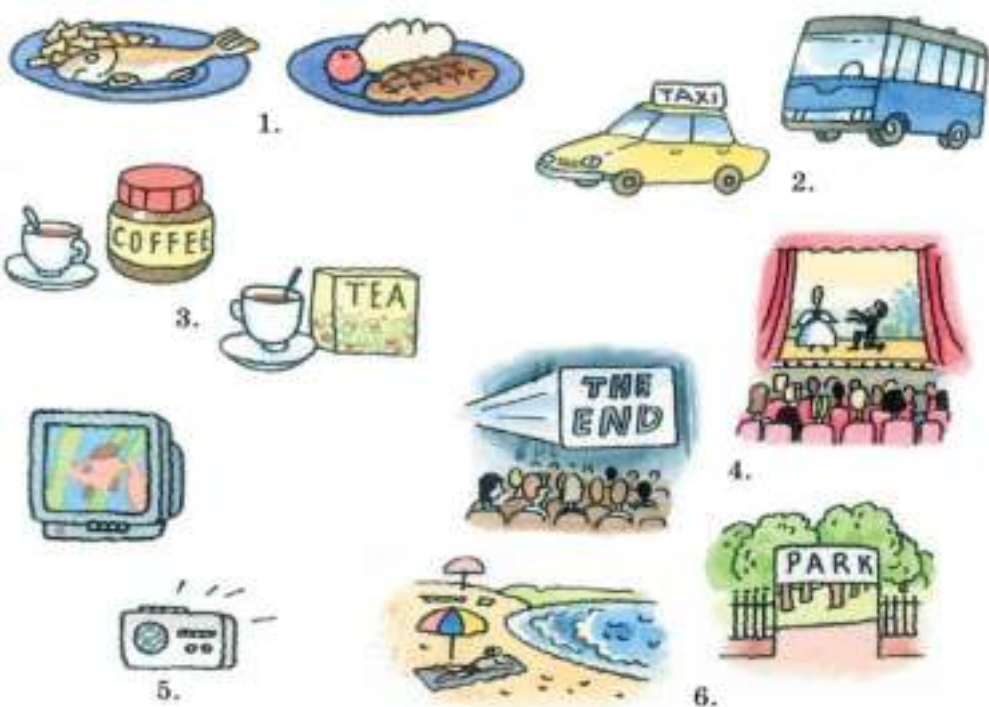
7.

9. Bob and Betty are thinking what to do this evening. Make up their questions.

Example: Shall we go to a restaurant or have dinner at home?



¹ to offer ['ɒfə] — предлагать



Do It on Your Own

10. Write about spring, summer, autumn and winter in twenty sentences.

11. Write the sentences differently. Use *before*, *after*, *as soon as* in them.

- 1) I'll go to university when I finish school.
- 2) I'll stay at a hotel when I come to Sochi.
- 3) When I'm twenty-five, I'll have a family of my own.
- 4) When I buy the vegetables, I'll prepare some tasty soup.
- 5) When autumn comes, we'll gather mushrooms in the forest.
- 6) When summer comes, we'll sunbathe a lot.

12. Check yourself.

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
10	20	
11	6	

UNIT SIX

The Way We Look¹



Step One

Do It Together

1. A. Listen to the poem, (126), and say what the girl could do at different times.

Example: When she was one, she could do nothing.

WHEN I WAS ONE (by Carolyn Graham)

When I was one,
It wasn't much fun.
What did you do
When you were two?



When I was two,
I learned to ski.
What did you do
When you were three?



When I was three,
I danced on the floor.
What did you do
When you were four?



When I was four,
I learned to dive.
What did you do
When you were five?



нырять

¹ The way we look. — То, как мы выглядим.

When I was five,
I learned new tricks.
What did you do
When you were six?

новые проказы

When I was six,
It was really heaven.
What did you do
When you were seven?

это было божественно

When I was seven,
I learned to skate.
What did you do
When you were eight?



When I was eight,
It was really great,
But when I was one,
It wasn't much fun.

было здорово

B. Say what you could do when you were 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8.

MEMO
Для того чтобы сказать «могу» или «может», помимо так называемого модального глагола **can** (I can sing. He can't skate.), используется конструкция **to be able to** (I am able to sing. He isn't able to skate and they are not able to ski.). В прошедшем времени соответственно:

I was able to sing well.

He was able to skate when he was six.

They weren't able to ski when they were young.

Формы будущего времени у глагола **can** нет. Если необходимо сказать, что кто-то сможет что-то сделать в будущем, используется только **to be able to**:

Soon I will be able to drive a car.

Next summer we'll be able to go to the sea.

	to be able to	can
Present Simple	am (is, are) able to	can
Past Simple	was (were) able to	could
Future Simple	will/shall be able to	—

2. Say what John was (not) able to do when he was a young child and what he is able to do now.

Example: John was not able to play basketball when he was four.
John is able to ride a bicycle now.

John is four.



- read picture books
- play with his toys
- roller-skate

- fish
- ride a bicycle¹
- play basketball



Ten years later.

- play on the computer
- ride a bicycle
- fish with his father
- play basketball



- skate
- play football
- read real books
- roller-skate

¹ a tricycle ['traɪsɪkl] — трехколёсный велосипед



3. John lives in Great Britain and Yura lives in Russia. In these countries young people can do the same things at different ages. When will John and Yura be able to do these things? Check, 🎧 (127).

- 1) John/Yura will be able to drive a car when he is (16/17/18).
- 2) John/Yura will be able to drive a minibus when he is (17/18/21).
- 3) John/Yura will be able to go to university when he is (16/17/18).
- 4) John/Yura will be able to marry when he is (18/19/20).
- 5) John/Yura will be able to go to the army when he is (16/17/18).
- 6) John/Yura will be able to have a passport (at any age/when he is 14/16).
- 7) John/Yura will be able to buy motorbike when he is (16/17/18).
- 8) John/Yura will be able to start his business when he is (16/17/18).
- 9) John/Yura will be able to buy a house when he is (18/19/21).
- 10) John/Yura will be able to vote¹ when he is (16/18/21).

4. Answer your friend's questions.

- 1) Who shall I invite to the party?
- 2) Where shall we go on Sunday?
- 3) What shall I give you for your birthday?
- 4) What shall we do this evening?
- 5) What film shall we see?
- 6) What juice shall I buy for you?
- 7) When shall we go to the beach?
- 8) What food shall I take to the beach?
- 9) How shall we get to the metro station?
- 10) Where shall we go after classes?

MEMO

В английском языке, в отличие от русского, существуют разные слова, чтобы обозначить **ноги, руки и пальцы**.

Пальцы на руках — **fingers** ['fɪŋgəz], а на ногах — **toes** [təʊz]. **Рука** по-английски может быть **hand** (кисть) и **arm** (от плеча до запястья). **Нога** также имеет два наименования: **foot** (ступня) и **leg** (нога от бедра до ступни).

¹ to vote — голосовать

a

...

body
face
neck
head
nose
mouth

...

eyes
ears
lips
arms
hands
fingers
feet
toes
legs
hair

7. What are they like?



MEMO

Имена прилагательные в английском языке часто образуются при помощи префикса **un-** (unhappy, unpleasant). **Un-** придаёт слову противоположное значение:

able — способный, unable — неспособный;
born — рождённый, unborn — нерождённый.

Суффикс **-ful** используется для образования имён прилагательных от существительных:

wonder (чудо) + ful = wonderful (чудесный, удивительный);
beauty (красота) + ful = beautiful (красивый);
colour (цвет) + ful = colourful (красочный).

8. What do the new words mean?

A.

- 1) The job was **uneasy** and we finished it only late in the evening.
- 2) The house was old and **unclean**. I didn't like it.
- 3) Why are you **unhappy** today?
- 4) If you are **unwell**, go to see your doctor.
- 5) The children were **uninterested** in their mother's story.
- 6) The meeting was **unofficial** but a lot of people came to it.
- 7) Jane wanted to go to university but was **unsuccessful**.
- 8) The day was **unpleasant** — wet and cold.

B.

- 1) The trees in autumn are really **colourful**.
- 2) Young animals are usually **playful**.
- 3) I think that Sam is a good friend and very **helpful** too.

Do It on Your Own

9. Write the same differently.

Example: Everyone **can** learn English.
Everyone is able to learn English.

- 1) Everyone **can** gather a lot of mushrooms in autumn.
- 2) Jill **couldn't** skate well when she was little.
- 3) We **can't** ski downhill here.
- 4) They **couldn't** change their plan.
- 5) People **can** sunbathe in summer.
- 6) We **could** watch the royal parade from the balcony.

10. Bob can't do these things now. Write what he will be able to do when he is older.

- 1) Bob can't answer difficult questions now, but when he is older ...
- 2) Bob can't become an astronaut now, but ...
- 3) Bob can't fly on business now, but ...
- 4) Bob can't go to college now, but ...
- 5) Bob can't work on the computer now, but ...
- 6) Bob can't have a bank card now, but ...

11. What are they? Write their names.

- 1) We are able to take and touch things, work or write because we have them.
- 2) We are able to hug each other because we have them.
- 3) We are able to see things because we have them.


- 4) We are able to hear things because we have them.
- 5) We are able to think because we have it.
- 6) We are able to eat and drink because we have it.
- 7) We are able to smile because we have them.
- 8) We are able to turn our heads left and right because we have it.
- 9) We are able to walk and run because we have them.
- 10) We are able to smell¹ because we have it.

12. Check yourself.

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
9	6	
10	6	
11	10	

Step Two

Do It Together

1. Listen,  (129), and say who is who in the picture.



Who is Alice? Who is Linda? Who is Jane?

¹ to smell — нюхать

2. When will Sally be able to do these?

Example: Sally will be able to watch a basketball game when she goes to the stadium.

1) to watch a basketball game	to be seventeen
2) to drive a car	to have a computer
3) to send a postcard to her granny	to go to Russia
4) to go boating	to go to the Alps
5) to ski in the mountains	to buy a boat
6) to learn to swim	to go to the centre of London
7) to buy souvenirs	to visit a gift shop
8) to visit the National Gallery	to spend some time near the sea
9) to leave for Moscow	to go to the post office
10) to chat online	to go to the stadium

3. A. Listen, (130), and learn these helpful words.



People's faces can be	round [raʊnd] (круглый),
People's bodies can be	oval ['əʊvəl] (овальный),
People's hair can be	slim [slɪm] (стройный),
	stout [staʊt] (полный),
	curly ['kɜ:li] (вьющийся),
	fair [feə] (светлый).

People's noses can be turned-up ['tɜ:ndɪp] (вздёрнутый).
 People's legs and arms can be shapely ['ʃeɪplɪ] (красивой формы).
 Some people are good-looking [ˌɡʊd'lu:kɪŋ] (приятной наружности).

B. What are their opposites¹.

a round face — an oval face, a narrow face	dark hair — ... hair, ... hair
a thin body — a ... body, a ... body	a straight nose — a ... nose
long hair — ... hair	a big mouth — a ... mouth, a ... mouth
curly hair — ... hair	a stout body — a ... body, a ... body

¹ opposite ['ɒpəzɪt] — противоположность

4. What are they like?

a)

William Stanley is a journalist.
Soon he'll be 40.
He is tall and big and a little stout.
His hair is dark and curly. It's short.
He has a round pleasant face.
His eyes are dark grey.
His mouth is big, his teeth are white and good.
He has a big nose.



b)

Allan Smith is an astronaut.
He is nearly 35.
He is
His hair
He has a ... face.
His eyes
His mouth
He has a ... nose.



c)

Margo Perry is a photographer.
She is 27.
She is
Her hair
She has a ... face.
Her eyes
Her mouth
She has a ... nose.



5. Complete the dialogue and act it out.

WHAT ARE YOU LIKE?

X. Hello! I'd like to speak to...

You. Speaking.

X. It's... here. I have a letter and a little present for you from your friend Nick. Can we meet this afternoon? You know, I'm leaving for London tonight.

You. ...

X. Let's meet at the Post Office at 3 o'clock. Is it OK with you?

You. ...

X. What are you like?

You. ...

And what are you like?

X. ...

You. Very well. See you at 3 o'clock near the Post Office.

Модальные глаголы

Уже известный вам глагол **can (could)** относится к группе модальных. Большинство этих глаголов имеют ряд особенностей:

- 1) перед модальными глаголами и после них не употребляется частица **to**: **can speak, can go**;
- 2) в 3-м лице единственного числа настоящего времени у них не используется окончание **-s**: **he can, she can**;
- 3) вопросы и отрицания они образуют без вспомогательных глаголов: **Can you sing? I can't skate.**

К группе модальных глаголов относятся глаголы **must [mʌst]** и **should [ʃʊd]**. Глагол **must** часто переводится как «должен, должны» или «обязан, обязаны» и употребляется, если хотят отдать указание, заставить человека сделать что-то.

You must come home at five.
John must not eat ice cream. He is ill.
Must I clean the floor?

Глагол **should** звучит менее категорично. Его употребляют, когда хотят дать совет, порекомендовать сделать что-то. Обычный перевод — «следует (сделать)».

You should go and see this film. It's very good.
You should not come home so late.
Should we come back later?

В отрицательной форме оба глагола чаще используются в сокращенной форме:

mustn't [mʌsnt], shouldn't [ʃʊdnt].

6. A. Use must or mustn't.

- 1) You ... go out. It is raining heavily.
- 2) Your room is messy. You ... do your room and clean the floor.
- 3) Jane, you're ill. You ... stay in bed.
- 4) Bob has a high temperature. He ... go to school.
- 5) It's eleven o'clock. Betty ... go to bed.
- 6) Jill has bad teeth. She ... eat much chocolate.
- 7) You ... play in the street. It's dangerous¹.

B. Use should or shouldn't.

- 1) If you want to come to school at 8, you ... get up at 7.
- 2) The Harry Potter books are interesting. You ... read them.

¹ It's dangerous [ˈdeɪndʒərəs]. — Это опасно.

- 3) Children ... eat more fruit and vegetables.
4) Little children ... spend much time before the television.
5) Young people ... read more.
6) You ... shout at animals.
7. What will you say to them? Use *must* or *should* to complete the sentences. Sometimes you can use *must* and *should* but not always.
- 1) Your mother is very tired after work.
You ... go to bed early.
- 2) Your little brother crosses the street running.
You ... cross the street walking.
- 3) Your friend doesn't eat fruit and vegetables.
You ... fruit and vegetables.
- 4) Your little sister doesn't look where she goes.
You ... where you are going.
- 5) Your friend can't swim.
You ... learn to swim as soon as you can.
- 6) You are a teacher. Your pupil doesn't do his homework.
You ... your homework every day.
- 7) You are a father. Your teenager daughter stays out late.
You ... home earlier.
- 8) You are a doctor. Your young patient is too stout.
You ... spend more time running, jumping, and playing games.
- 9) You are a mother. Your daughter doesn't like reading books.
You ... read more.
- 10) Your father wants to buy a new car.
You ... a sports car.

Do It on Your Own

8. Write what Ted *must* or *mustn't* do.
- a) walk on the grass in the park
b) help his granny
c) listen to the radio in class
d) take photos in the museum
e) take his dog out
f) feed his pets
g) go shopping
h) go to bed late
i) talk with his friend at the lesson

9. Write about your mum, dad, brother or sister. What are they like?

10. Check yourself.

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
8	9	

Step Three

Do It Together

1. Listen, (131), and say which sentences you heard.

- 1) I think you should/shouldn't get up late.
- 2) The children must/mustn't spend their holidays here.
- 3) These people must/mustn't think about their future.
- 4) They should/shouldn't go boating in this weather.
- 5) Charles and Dan should/shouldn't spend all day on the beach.
- 6) You should/shouldn't buy this book for Alice.
- 7) A lot of people think that they must/mustn't go to university or college.
- 8) I know I should/shouldn't dream of becoming a writer.
- 9) Paul must/mustn't stay in hospital now.
- 10) Everyone should/shouldn't have an interesting job.

2. Match the parts of the sentences. Complete them with *should* or *shouldn't*.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1) If you want to be a successful journalist, you ... | a) buy a cook book. |
| 2) If you want to be slim, ... | b) eat many sweets and chocolates. |
| 3) If you want to travel about England by car, ... | c) stay at you friends'. |
| 4) If you want to cook well, ... | d) be able to do cross-country and downhill skiing. |
| 5) If you want to become a good skier, ... | e) be able to read a map. |
| 6) If you want to have a pleasant trip, ... | f) read a lot. |
| 7) If you don't want to stay at a hotel, ... | g) have a lot of money. |



Чтобы получить разрешение сделать что-то, часто используется модальный глагол **may**. В подобных вопросах **may** звучит вежливо и уважительно.

May I use your bike? — Можно взять твой велосипед?

Обычными ответами на подобные вопросы являются:

- 1) Yes, you may. / Yes, please. / Do, please. — Да.
- 2) No, you may not. / No, you mustn't. — Нет. (Категорический отказ, запрет.)
- 3) I'm afraid not. — Боюсь, что нет. (Мягкий отказ.)

В разговорах с близкими людьми, друзьями в подобных вопросах чаще употребляется глагол **can**.

- Can I use your bike? — Yes, you can.
- No, you can't.
- I'm afraid not.

3. *Can or may? Sometimes you can use may and can.*

- 1) You are talking to your teacher:
... I go out?
- 2) You are talking to your brother:
... I play on your computer?
- 3) You are talking to your parent:
... I go to the cinema, Mum?
- 4) You are sitting in a restaurant
 - a) talking to a man at the next table:
... I have the ketchup, please?
 - b) talking to your friend:
... I have the ketchup and oil, please?

4. *Answer yes or no. Use can/can't, may/may not, must/mustn't.*

- 1) — May I go out?
— ... It's raining heavily outdoors.
- 2) — May I read this book, Miss Campbell?
— ... It is not for children.
- 3) — Can I visit Victoria at the hospital?
— ... She is very ill and wants to see you.
- 4) — Can I go to bed later tonight?
— ... You have no school tomorrow and can get up later.
- 5) — Can I use your mobile, Jack?
— ... Here it is.

6) — May I come in, Miss Bell?

— ..., but don't be late next time.

7) — May we stay here a little longer?

— ... It's getting dark and it's time to go to bed.

5. Read the text. Match its parts and pictures.

NOW AND THEN

1) Now Mr James Ford is an old man. He has very little hair and all his hair is white. His smiling eyes are light blue. His lips are thin and his face is white but his arms are still strong and shapely. He is very thin.

When he was a child, he was very plump and had a lot of curly dark hair. His face was often pink and his lips were red. His teeth were white and good. He had a lot of friends and loved playing games with them.

2) Mr Peter Jenkins is nearly sixty now. He is a stout tall man with a round face. His hair was brown, but now it is grey. His eyes are dark brown. His nose is big. His hands and feet are big too. He likes a good joke¹ and has a lot of friends. They like to play cards together.

When he was a child, he was very thin and weak. His brown eyes were often sad, and his mouth seldom smiled. He didn't like playing with children. He liked reading books.

3) Jane O'Connor is thin and very tall for a woman. Her short light brown hair is curly. Jane's eyes are big. Now they are grey, but when she was young, they were more blue than grey.



a)



b)



c)



d)



e)

¹ a joke [dʒəʊk] — шутка

In those days she was slim. Her legs and arms were shapely and her oval face was very nice. Her hair was fair and soft. She was a very good-looking girl.



f)

4) Jill Parker is not young. She is nearly seventy. She is short and a little stout. She has a nice oval face with dark eyes and a small turned-up nose. Now her hair is grey, but when she was a young girl, it was dark and beautiful. She was slim and active¹ and her friends called her "Our Jilly".



h)



g)

6. Listen,  (132), and learn these helpful words.

A.

People can be

kind [kaɪnd] (добрый)

friendly ['frendli] (дружелюбный)

clever ['kleɪvə] (умный)

honest ['ɒnəst] (честный)

brave [breɪv] (смелый)

or

selfish ['selfɪʃ] (эгоистичный)

stupid ['stju:pɪd] (глупый)

lazy ['leɪzi] (ленивый)

greedy ['gri:di] (жадный)

¹ active ['æktɪv] — живая, подвижная



B.
rather ['rɑ:ðə] (довольно)
rather selfish
rather stupid
rather lazy
rather greedy

7. What are their opposites?

unkind —
unpleasant —
unfriendly —
unhappy —
unselfish —



Англичане не любят говорить о чём-то или о ком-то в категоричной манере, особенно если приходится упоминать не очень приятные качества. Так, например, о несмышлёном ребёнке скажут скорее **not clever**, нежели **stupid**, а о лжеце — **he is not honest**. Пытаясь смягчить отрицательные характеристики, англичане часто используют слово **rather** (довольно).

Сравните:

rather selfish — довольно эгоистичный (но не законченный эгоист);
rather lazy — довольно ленивый (но не отъявленный лентяй).

8. Look at the pictures. What are they like?



1.



2.



3.



4.



5.



6.



7.

9. What are they like?

- 1) Ben doesn't like working, he is rather
- 2) Sally is one of the best pupils in her class, she is rather
- 3) Daniel can eat all the sweets without giving any to his friends, he is rather ... and
- 4) Chuck always says what he thinks, he is
- 5) Sam can ride any horse, he is so
- 6) Diana always takes the best desk in the classroom. She is rather
- 7) We all like Tony. He is always ready to help his friends. Everybody thinks he is ... and
- 8) Not long ago Linda went to the park at midnight. She thought it was a ... thing to do, but I think it was
- 9) When Melissa saw somebody's money on the park bench, she took the money to the police station. Melissa is very

10. What can you say about them?

Example: This is a famous film star
A. Schwarzenegger as Terminator.
Terminator is big and strong.
He has an oval face and dark short hair. His eyes are brown and his nose is straight. He is good-looking.
He has a strong body. He is brave and clever but not very friendly.
I think, he is honest and kind.



1.



2.



3.



4.



5.

11. Bob is a greedy boy. When his friends ask him for something¹, he always says *No*. Complete the answers for Bob.

Example: SAM. Can I take your bike?
BOB. I'm afraid not. I'm going to ride it soon.

- | | | |
|------------------|-----------------------------|----------|
| 1) EMMA. | Can I read this book? | BOB. ... |
| 2) COLIN. | Can I take your camera? | BOB. ... |
| 3) LITTLE SARAH. | May I play on the computer? | BOB. ... |
| 4) ALAN. | Can I talk on your mobile? | BOB. ... |
| 5) MARY. | May we play with your dog? | BOB. ... |
| 6) POLLY. | May I have an apple? | BOB. ... |
| 7) JOHN. | Can I ask for your pen? | BOB. ... |
| 8) CHARLIE. | Can I ask for some juice? | BOB. ... |

Do It on Your Own

12. Complete the sentences. Use the modal verbs *can*, *may*, *must (not)* or *should (not)*, *shall*.

- 1) You are lazy, my boy. I think, you ... work more.
- 2) If you are too tired to go home, you ... stay here for the night.
- 3) ... I use your mobile, please?
- 4) Granny is ill, I think you ... visit her.
- 5) Mary is selfish. She ... think more about her friends.
- 6) John is clever. He ... speak three languages.
- 7) ... I read again, Miss?
- 8) It's very hot. You ... stay in the sun too long.

13. Write what you are like now and what you would like to be in the future².

14. Check yourself.

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
12	8	

¹ to ask somebody for something — просить у кого-л. что-л.

² in the future — в будущем

Step Four

Do It Together

1. Listen, (133). Say what Steve, Kate, Don and Tom are like.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1) Steve is ... | a) stupid | b) greedy | c) lazy |
| 2) Kate is ... | a) unfriendly | b) greedy | c) unselfish |
| 3) Don is ... | a) honest | b) unselfish | c) kind |
| 4) Tom is ... | a) clever | b) friendly | c) active |

2. Here are the answers. What are the questions?

- 1) ___? — No, Ted, you mustn't. Little Ann is sleeping.
- 2) ___? — I'm afraid not, dear. It is late.
- 3) ___? — Yes, you may. The weather is fine, you'll have a good time.
- 4) ___? — No, you can't. You must go to the supermarket.
- 5) ___? — I'm afraid not, Paul. The water in the river is very cold.
- 6) ___? — I'm afraid not, Betty. I have no money.
- 7) ___? — Yes, you must. Your granny is very ill.
- 8) ___? — I am afraid not. You should do your room.
- 9) ___? — Yes, you may. But first help your brother.
- 10) ___? — I'm afraid not. She is getting stout. She shouldn't eat so many chocolates and sweets.

3. A. Match the words you know with the pictures.



caps



jackets



shoes and boots



pyjamas and nighties



MEMO

Целый ряд слов в английском и русском языках употребляется только во множественном числе. Очень часто они обозначают парные предметы: **shorts** — шорты, **trousers** — брюки, **leggings** — леггинсы, **jeans** — джинсы.

Согласуются эти существительные с глаголами во множественном числе, и вместо них могут употребляться местоимения **they/them** (они/их).

Английские слова **clothes**, **pyjamas** попадают в эту же группу:

The clothes are on the sofa. They are dry.

My pyjamas are blue. I like them.

Сравните: Одежда лежит на диване. Она сухая.
Моя пижама голубая. Мне она нравится.

6. Complete the sentences.

- 1) Your clothes (is/are) always nice. Who buys (it/them) for you?
- 2) Alice's purple shorts (was/were) too good for the beach.
- 3) Peter's uniform (was/were) rather new. He bought (it/them) only a week ago.
- 4) The black trainers (was/were) under the bed, that's why I couldn't see (it/them).
- 5) Where (is/are) your pink blouse, Liz? I'm going to wash (it/them) together with my clothes.
- 6) I like (this/these) green and white socks. May I have (it/them)?
- 7) My new red pyjamas (is/are) very warm and cosy.
- 8) My black sweater (is/are) too small for me now. I'm so sorry!
- 9) (Is/Are) your new jeans dark or light? Mine (is/are) dark blue.
- 10) His warm jacket (was/were) on the hook in the hall. He went there and took (it/them).

7. Learn how to pronounce and use the new words, 🗣️ (135).

A.

look — выглядеть

wear [wɛə] — носить (*быть одетым в*)

put on — надевать (*одежду*)

take off — снимать (*одежду*)

fashion [ˈfæʃən] — мода

fashionable [ˈfæʃənəbl] — модный

old-fashioned [ˌəʊldˈfæʃənd] — старомодный

neat [ni:t] — аккуратный, опрятный

important [ɪmˈpɔ:tənt] — важный

B.

look: to look old, to look wonderful, to look terrible. Jane always looks nice. What does Bob look like? He is tall and dark.

wear — wore [wɔ:]: to wear jeans, to wear hats. What is Alice wearing today? She is wearing black leggings and a purple sweater. When I saw John, he was wearing a light green jacket. When Helen was small, she wore pyjamas when she went to bed.

put on: to put on clothes, to put on a cap, to put on boots. In winter Jill usually wears boots but now she is putting on her trainers. Put on your warm scarf, the weather is nasty.

take off: to take off clothes, to take off a jacket. Take off your jacket and scarf, please.

fashion: to be in fashion, to be out of fashion. To read the Harry Potter books is in fashion now. Platform boots are out of fashion now. Black and white colours are always in fashion.

fashionable: fashionable clothes, a fashionable restaurant.

old-fashioned: old-fashioned clothes, old-fashioned people.

neat: a neat girl, a neat sweater. Jane's clothes are always neat. My cousin is neater than I am, his bedroom is never messy.

important: an important job, important people; to be important to you, to be important for you to go there. It is important to have neat clothes. Music is important to us. It is important for you to read more.

8. Complete the sentences. Use the new words.

- 1) This is my present. It's a new warm Put it round¹ your neck.
2) My mum always asks me to ... my boots when I come home.
3) It's a cold day today and I'm going to ... my warmest jacket.
4) Are jeans still² in ...? — Yes, they are and will always be.
5) Are you wearing your new dress? You ... wonderful in it.
6) Please ... your jacket in the hall and come into the room.
7) What would you like to ... to your birthday party?
8) Things that were ... only two years ago are ... now. Nobody wears them.
9) My brother is not a very ... boy. His clothes are often messy.
10) It's ... for everybody to wear clean clothes.

9. Say what you like to wear.

I	always	wear	trainers	to school.
	usually		_____	to a party.
	often		_____	to the theatre.
	sometimes		_____	to the beach.
	never			to the gym.
				to the disco.

¹ round — вокруг

² still — всё ещё



Ⓜ (136). Англичане часто задают так называемые разделительные вопросы (**disjunctive questions, or tag questions**). Они состоят из двух частей. Первая является утверждением, а вторая — вопросом. Запомните, как строятся подобные вопросы. Обратите внимание на глагол, которым выражено сказуемое предложения, и время, в котором стоит этот глагол.

to be

+

I **am** a pupil,
He **is** a boy,
It **is** a book,
We **are** Russians,
There **are** some books here,
Jane **will be** five,

-

aren't I?
isn't he?
isn't it?
aren't we?
aren't there?
won't she?

-

I **wasn't** there,
She **wasn't** in,
You **weren't** at school,
There **isn't** any juice in the fridge,
We **won't (shan't)** go there,

+

was I?
was she?
were you?
is there?
will (shall) we?

have got

I **have got** a family,
He **has got** a brother,
A cat **has got** a tail,
We **haven't got** a car,
You **haven't got** a bike,
They **haven't got** any pets,

haven't I?
hasn't he?
hasn't it?
have we?
have you?
have they?

Modal Verbs

I **can** ski,
We **could** swim well,
He **must** stay here,
She **can't** sing,
They **couldn't** drive,
You **mustn't** be afraid,

can't I?
couldn't we?
mustn't he?
can she?
could they?
must you?

10. Complete the disjunctive questions.

- 1) White socks are out of fashion, ...?
- 2) You are not afraid, child, ...?
- 3) Tim is rather brave, ...?



- 4) This scarf is not good for winter, ...?
- 5) I am your friend, ...?
- 6) They have got a lot of warm clothes, ...?
- 7) We haven't got any time to go shopping today, ...?
- 8) You can't put on your sandals in this cold weather, ...?
- 9) There are not any trainers in the shop, ...?
- 10) Your clothes must always look nice, ...?
- 11) Sarah will put on her new dress to the party, ...?
- 12) We shan't look good in jeans and sweaters in the theatre, ...?
- 13) Jim was a good-looking man, ...?
- 14) His clothes were old-fashioned and boring, ...?
- 15) There were some boots under the bed, ...?
- 16) You must wear clean and neat clothes, children, ...?
- 17) It is important to buy warm clothes for winter, ...?


Do It on Your Own

11. Complete the disjunctive questions.

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1) _____, isn't he? | 7) _____, couldn't she? |
| 2) _____, aren't I? | 8) _____, have you? |
| 3) _____, can you? | 9) _____, haven't we? |
| 4) _____, must we? | 10) _____, won't he? |
| 5) _____, weren't they? | 11) _____, is it? |
| 6) _____, will he? | 12) _____, wasn't it? |

12. Complete the sentences and write them down.

1) Women and girls seldom wear  these days. 2) Ann

is taking off her . 3) She is going to put on her blue



 when she

goes to bed. 5) People usually wear   .



and  when it is cold. 6) John!

You never put your



and in their right places.

7) It's time to go to bed. Put on your



and go to the bath-

room. 8) Hang your



on the hook.

13. Check yourself.

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
11	12	
12	11	

Step Five

Do It Together

1. Listen, (137). Say who is who in the picture.



Steve
Natasha
Mark
Julia
Tony
Carrie

1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6.

2. What is important to Ray and what is important to May?



pets
school
family
friends
roller skating
cars
computer



riding
music
books
flowers
clothes
singing
parents

3. Say the same differently.

Example: I'd very much like to finish reading this book.
It's important for me to finish reading this book.

- 1) John would very much like to meet his Russian friends again.
- 2) Mary would very much like to go travelling.
- 3) I'd very much like to be a good pupil.
- 4) We'd very much like to know English well.
- 5) People would very much like to be happy.
- 6) The children would very much like to spend more time together.
- 7) The teachers would very much like to have more free¹ time.
- 8) My friend would very much like to go to university.
- 9) They would very much like to be good friends.

¹ free [fri:] — свободный

1. Вторая часть разделительных вопросов в **present simple** и **past simple** строится при помощи форм глагола **to do (do, does, did)**, если в первой использован любой глагол, кроме модальных глаголов, глагола **to be** и оборота **have got/has got**.

My school begins at 8.30, doesn't it? He came late, didn't he?
Many children don't like porridge, do they? They didn't stop,
did they?

2. Предложения с оборотами **to have breakfast (brunch, lunch, dinner, tea, supper)**, **to have fun**, **to have a good time** также образуют разделительные вопросы при помощи вспомогательного глагола **do (does, did)**.

We don't have early breakfast, do we?
They had a lot of fun yesterday, didn't they?

3. Если в первой части вопроса употреблены местоимения **no/nobody/nothing** или наречие **never**, во второй части не используется отрицание (отрицательная частица **not**).

Alice never wears hats, does she?
Nobody wears shoes when swimming, do they?¹
John has got no suit, has he?
There is nothing on the table, is there?

4. Complete the sentences with tags.

- 1) Jane never visits fashion shows, ...?
a) does she b) doesn't she
- 2) Matilda bought nothing in this shop yesterday, ...?
a) did she b) didn't she
- 3) Alice has no winter boots, ...?
a) hasn't she b) has she
- 4) We can't buy swimming suits in supermarkets, ...?
a) can we b) can't we
- 5) James showed me a lot of his fashionable suits, ...?
a) did he b) didn't he
- 6) They won't go to the country tomorrow, ...?
a) will they b) won't they

¹ Обратите внимание, что **nobody (no one)**, **everybody (everyone)**, **somebody (someone)**, **anybody (anyone)** во второй части вопроса заменяются местоимением **they**.



7) Young people like wearing jeans and other fashionable things, ...?

a) do they

b) don't they

5. Listen, (138), and learn these helpful words.



1.



2.



3.



4.



5.



6.



7.



8.



9.



10.



11.



12.



13.

1) trousers ['traʊzəz] — брюки

2) suit [su:t] — костюм

3) dress [dres] — платье

4) skirt [skɜ:t] — юбка

5) shirt [ʃɜ:t] — рубашка

6) T-shirt [ti:'ʃɜ:t] — футболка

7) sweatshirt [swet'ʃɜ:t] — толстовка

8) coat [kəʊt] — пальто

9) raincoat ['reɪnkəʊt] — плащ

10) fur coat [fɜ: 'kəʊt] — шуба

11) shoes [ʃu:z] — туфли

12) gloves [[glʌvz] — перчатки

13) mittens [mɪtnz] — варежки

6. Mike and Bob are twins but they always wear different clothes. Say who is Mike and who is Bob.

Mike is wearing long black trousers, a grey jacket, and a white shirt. He has brown shoes and brown socks on. He is not wearing his coat. His coat is on the hook. He has his gloves in his left hand.

Bob is not wearing a suit. He is wearing a grey sweatshirt and dark grey long trousers. He has a T-shirt under his sweatshirt. It is yellow. His boots are grey. They are light grey. He has his gloves in his right hand and his jacket in his left hand.



1.

2.

7. Look at the pictures and answer the questions.

Example: It is a narrow red skirt, isn't it? —
No, it isn't. The skirt is rather narrow,
but it is blue.



- 1) It is a long blue raincoat, isn't it?
- 2) They are short brown trousers, aren't they?
- 3) It is a short grey fur coat, isn't it?



- 4) They are high purple boots, aren't they?
- 5) This is a short red T-shirt, isn't it?
- 6) They are narrow pink pyjamas, aren't they?
- 7) This is a long orange sweatshirt, isn't it?
- 8) It is a neat green dress, isn't it?
- 9) They are old brown shoes, aren't they?

8. Read the text and match the parts with their names. There are three parts and four names.

- 1) What do children wear today?
- 2) What do we wear in cold and warm weather?
- 3) Do we always know what to put on?
- 4) Why are our clothes important?

CLOTHES

a) Our clothes help us to stay warm and dry in any weather. They help us to look good too. That's why clothes are so important to us. Clothes are very different. Uniforms can look boring, but they are good for wearing at school. Jeans, sweaters and sweatshirts are good for after-school wear. Your parents wear formal suits to work and put on evening clothes when they go out. Some people often change their clothes, some people don't, but if they want to look nice, their clothes must be clean and neat.

b) We buy different clothes for different seasons. In Russia we must have warm clothes for winter wear: coats or fur coats, thick jackets, hats, scarves, boots, gloves and mittens. In spring we change into raincoats and thin jackets. In summer we like wearing light¹ skirts and dresses, shorts and T-shirts of bright colours, trainers and sandals. English people say, "There is no bad weather, there are bad clothes."

c) It's very important to wear the right clothes to the right places. You will look wrong if you wear a suit to a disco or if you put on old jeans and a T-shirt to a good restaurant. Some people have a talent for choosing and wearing clothes. They always look wonderful in their trousers, shirts, skirts and dresses. Their clothes are not always fashionable, but they are just right² for them. The best thing is to have your style³ in clothes.

¹ light — *ад.*: лёгкий

² just right — как раз то, что нужно

³ a style [stajl] — стиль

9. Can you say more on these?

- 1) "Clothes are very different." ...
- 2) "We buy clothes for different seasons." ...
- 3) "It's very important to wear the right clothes to the right places." ...

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Why is the way we look important?

10. These people are models. Speak about their clothes at the fashion show. The words in the box can be helpful, 🗣️ (139).

light, dark, long, short, straight, narrow, wonderful,
beautiful, fashionable, stylish

Good evening, ladies and gentlemen! Welcome to our fashion show! Today we are presenting a new collection of clothes and we hope that you'll like them.



This is Jake.
He is
wearing ...



This is
Robert.
He ...



These are
Mark and
Dennis.
They



And this
is Kate.
Today she
is wearing ...

Meet
Jennifer.
She ...



Polly and
Sofia are
showing
you the
hit of the
season.
They ...



Do It on Your Own

11. Use the right verb forms in these tag questions.

- 1) All people like presents, ...?
a) aren't they b) don't they c) do they
- 2) Nobody knows French in your class, ...?
a) don't they b) do they c) doesn't they
- 3) They saw a good film yesterday, ...?
a) do they b) didn't they c) did they
- 4) You are watching football, ...?
a) aren't you b) are you c) don't you
- 5) We wash our clothes every week, ...?
a) do we b) don't we c) didn't we
- 6) Tomorrow will be warm and sunny, ...?
a) will it b) isn't it c) won't it
- 7) Mother cooks very well, ...?
a) doesn't she b) isn't she c) wasn't she
- 8) The children really enjoyed swimming, ...?
a) did they b) didn't they c) they did
- 9) We had breakfast early, ...?
a) had we b) did we c) didn't we
- 10) No one is hungry, ...?
a) are they b) aren't they c) do they

12. Write 10 sentences about what you wear in different seasons.

13. Check yourself.

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
11	10	
12	10	

UNIT SEVEN

In and Out of School



Step One

Do It Together

1. Answer these questions.

- 1) What do you like to wear to school?
- 2) What do you like to put on to a party?
- 3) In what clothes do you look really good?
- 4) What are the best clothes for winter, as you see it?
- 5) What are the best clothes for summer?
- 6) What clothes and colours are in fashion now?
- 7) What clothes are boring?
- 8) What are your favourite colours in clothes?
- 9) Do you have your style in clothes? Are your clothes formal or not formal?
- 10) Do you make your clothes or buy them?

2. What are these school uniforms like? Which of them do you like more? Why?



1.



2.



3.

3. Learn some words we often use at school.

textbook ['tekstbuk] — учебник

exercise book ['eksəsaɪz ,buk] — тетрадь

daybook ['deɪbuk] — школьный дневник

dictionary ['dɪkʃənəri] — словарь

brush [brʌʃ] — кисточка

paint [peɪnt] — краска

ruler ['ru:lə] — линейка

rubber ['rʌbə] — ластик

pencil case ['pensəl ,keɪs] — пенал

pencil sharpener ['pensəl ,ʃɑ:pəʃənə] — точилка

felt-tip pen [feltɪp'pen] — фломастер

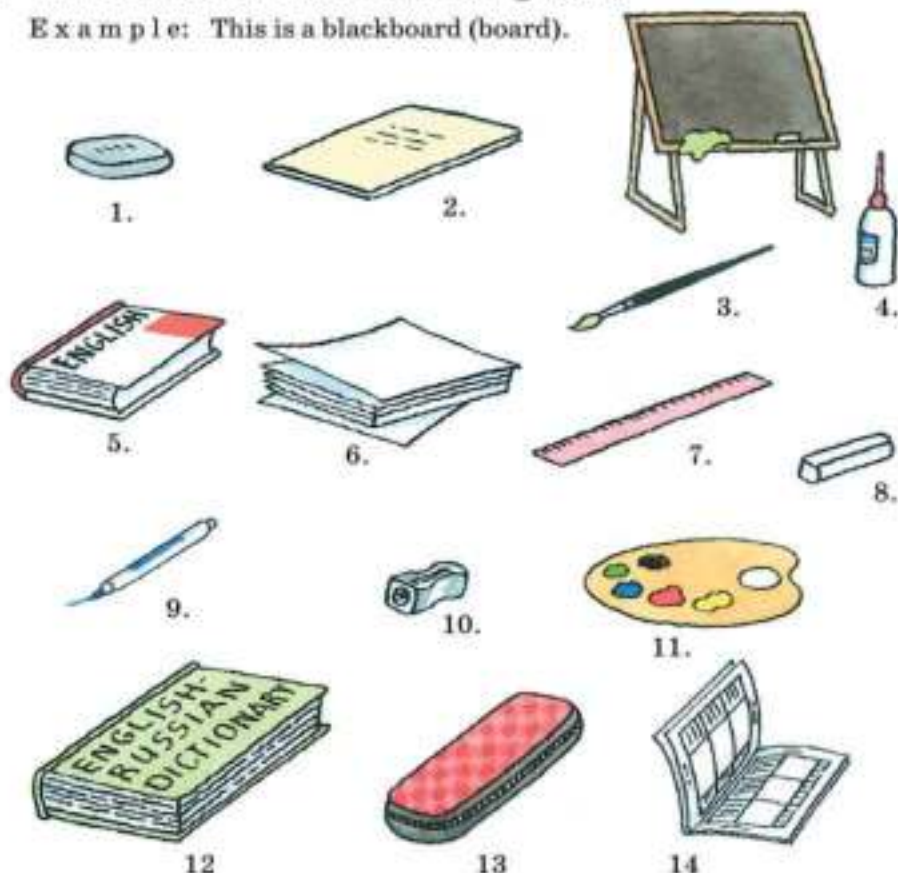
paper ['peɪpə] — бумага

chalk [tʃɔ:k] — мел

glue [glu:] — клей

4. What are they? Check your answers, (140).

Example: This is a blackboard (board).



7. Lucy works in a shop. Today is her first day at work and she doesn't know where things are. Help her.

Example: The pens are in the red box.



8. A. Listen to the dialogue, (141). Repeat it and then act out.

AT THE SHOP

- What can I do for you?
— We would like some brushes and paints. I think we shall buy some paper and pencils too.
— Any felt-tip pens?
— No, thank you. But I want a pencil sharpener and a pencil case, please.
— Here you are.
— Thank you.

pencils/textbooks
pens/exercise books
glue/chalk
rubbers/rulers
pencil sharpeners/dictionaries
ruler/picture book
felt-tip pen/book of poems

- B. Make your own¹ dialogues with the words on the right and act them out.

¹ your own — свои собственные

9. What are they like?

Example: My desk at home is seldom neat. There are a lot of exercise books and textbooks on it. I've got a thick dictionary on it too. There's always a bottle of glue, some pens and pencils there.

- your desk at home
- your desk in the classroom before (after) the lesson
- your desk at an English lesson
- your teacher's table
- your school bag before going to school
- your pencil case
- your English classroom
- your shelf (or bookcase) at home

Do It on Your Own**10. Countables or uncountables?**

chalk, water, a paint, a ruler, a rubber, a dress, a brush, glue, cheese, glass, a glass, a pencil sharpener, paper, salt, bread, a felt-tip, a dictionary

countables

a paint

...

uncountables

chalk

...

11. Write answers to these questions.

- What can we write with?
- What can we paint with?
- Where can we look up English words we don't know?
- What books do we use at an English lesson?
- Where do we write our homework?
- What do we write on the blackboard with?
- Where do teachers write down your marks¹?

12. Check yourself.

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
10	15	
11	7	

¹ a mark [mɑ:k] — оценка, отметка

Step Two

Do It Together

1. Listen, (142), and say whose bags they are.

Which bag is Julia's and which bag is Lisa's?



1.



2.

2. Article *a/an* or *no article*?

1) I haven't got ... mobile. 2) Do you like ... orange juice? 3) Boris never wears ... uniform. 4) What do we use ... glue for? 5) Fanny doesn't drink ... milk. 6) There is little ... paper in my desk. 7) I haven't got ... warm pyjamas. 8) There is no ... water in the jug. 9) Is there any ... chalk in the classroom? 10) Linda, you should buy ... English-Russian dictionary. 11) Please buy ... mineral water for dinner. 12) We eat ... a lot of vegetables in summer and autumn. 13) I like summer because I like ... sunshine. 14) Jackie had ... nice face with ... turned-up nose and ... beautiful dark eyes. 15) We sometimes water the house plants with ... rain water.

3. Complete the answers to these questions. The picture on page 227 can help you.

1) This school is new, isn't it? — ..., it is.
2) The classroom in the picture is not small, is it? — ..., it isn't.
3) You can't see any desks in the picture, can you? — ..., I can.
4) There are a lot of pupils in the classroom, aren't there? — ..., there aren't.

- 5) There is no teacher in the classroom, is there? — ..., there is.
 6) The pupils are sitting at their desks, aren't they? — ..., they aren't.
 7) The teacher is not writing on the blackboard, is he? — ..., he isn't.
 8) The teacher and the pupils are not talking, are they? — ..., they are.



MEMO

При ответе на разделительные вопросы в английском языке не используют утверждение и отрицание одновременно, что типично для русского языка.

Сравните:

Русский — Ты ведь не любишь кофе, верно?
 — Да (+), не (-) люблю.

Английский — You don't like coffee, do you?
 — No (-), I don't (-).

Русский — Она не умеет петь, не так ли?
 — Нет (-), умеет (+).

Английский — She can't sing, can she?
 — Yes (+), she can (+). (But she can.)

4. Learn how to pronounce and use the new words, 🗣️ (143).



A.

drawing ['drɔ:ɪŋ] — рисунок

carry ['kæri] — носить, нести

borrow ['bɒrəʊ] — 1) взять на время; 2) брать займы, одалживать

draw [drɔ:] — рисовать

find [faɪnd] — находить

learn [lɜ:n] — учить

learn by heart [hɑ:t] — учить наизусть

tell [tel] — сказать, рассказать

B.

draw — **drew** [dru:]: to draw an animal, to draw with a pencil. To draw means to make a picture with the help of a pencil.

drawing ['drɔ:ɪŋ]: John's drawing of a house was really good.

carry: to carry a bag, to carry books. Where is Sarah carrying my cup of coffee? Jane carried the bag back to her desk.

borrow: 1) to borrow a pen (a bike). Can I borrow your calculator?
2) to borrow a dictionary from a teacher. I borrowed some money from Alex, I'll give it back on Friday.

find — **found** [faʊnd]: to find a job, to find an old drawing, to find a hotel. It is very difficult for young people to find a job in this city. Jill found a fashionable scarf in the shop.

learn — **learnt**: to learn English (French), to learn to swim. What did you learn at school today? I want to learn to drive a car.

learn by heart: Is it easy to learn long texts by heart?

tell — **told** [təʊld]: to tell your friend about your holidays. Tell me about your day. Will you tell your mother about the trip? Peter told me the news, and then told it all to Janet.

MEMO

Запомните сочетания с глаголом **tell**:

to tell the time — сказать, который час

to tell a story (a fairy tale) ['feəri teɪl] — рассказать историю (сказку)

to tell a lie (lies) — говорить неправду

to tell the truth [tru:θ] — говорить правду

Are you telling the truth? Jane never tells lies. Can you tell me the time? My granny always tells my little sister a fairy tale before she goes to bed.

5. What are they doing?



1.



2.



3.



4.



5.



6.

6. David doesn't know where his school bag is. What does he ask his friends for?

E x a m p l e: David asks Polly for her mobile.
— Polly, can I borrow your mobile, please?

- 1) David asks Steve for his textbook.
- 2) David asks Rob for his pencil.
- 3) David asks Tony for his pencil sharpener.
- 4) David asks Tom for his paints.
- 5) David asks Alice for her dictionary.
- 6) David asks Jane for her brush.
- 7) David asks Max for his rubber.
- 8) David asks Ron for his ruler.

7. Peter never puts his things in the right place. It is always difficult for him to find his books, clothes, etc¹. Where did Peter find them yesterday morning?

E x a m p l e: Peter found his school bag under the piano.

¹ etc. (et cetera) [et'setərə] — и так далее



1.



2.



3.



4.



5.



6.



7.



8.



9.

MEMO

To say, to tell, to speak, to talk — известные вам глаголы «говoreния». **Tell** и **say** часто переводят как «сказать, говорить». Если известно, к кому обращена речь, используется глагол **tell**. Сравните:

Bob says he likes swimming.

Bob tells me (us, John) he likes swimming.

Say вводит прямую речь: Bob said, "I like swimming."

Глаголы **speak** и **talk** похожи, но **speak** обычно подразумевает, что говорит один.

William didn't look at me when I was speaking.

Если же в беседе участвуют двое или больше, то обычно используется глагол **talk**.

James and Ann often talk about music.

Спрашивая по телефону, можно ли поговорить с кем-то, используют глагол **speak**, так же как если речь идёт о владении иностранным языком.

Hello. Could I speak to Sue, please?
She doesn't speak English very well.

8. *Say, tell, speak or talk?* Check, (144).

- 1) — Jane can ... French very well, can't she?
— No, she can't. She began learning French last month.
- 2) — Can you ... me where Max lives?
— Sorry, I can't. I don't know his address.
- 3) (*on the phone*) — Morning. Can I ... to Anna, please?
— ...ing. Is that you, Harry?
- 4) — Why are you ...ing me lies?
— But I am not. I am ...ing you the truth.
- 5) — What's the matter? What does Philip ...?
— He ... little Lizzie is ill.
- 6) — What did you and Alice do in the kitchen?
— We sat drinking tea and ...ing.
- 7) — What are you ...ing?
— I am ...ing that I'm leaving for Moscow soon.
- 8) — Can you ... me the time, please?
— It's a quarter to five.

9. A. Read the text and say which of the sentences after the text are true.

SCHOOLS IN ENGLAND AND WALES (1)

In England and Wales children start school when they are five. A lot of them leave school when they become sixteen. Some stay for two more years and then go to universities or to colleges.

The school year in England begins in September. It never begins on Monday. The English don't think it is good to start a new thing on Monday, so school usually begins on the first Tuesday of September. Little children who are five, go to primary school¹ and stay there for six years.

They do a lot of things in class. They learn to read, to write, to count, and to draw. Their teachers often read to them interesting books and tell them fairy tales. Pupils play a lot and spend much

¹ primary ['praɪməri] school — начальная школа

time outdoors. They often visit museums and make trips to city centres.

When they are eleven, primary school pupils go to secondary school¹.

- 1) Pupils spend six years in primary school in England.
- 2) For many children school is over when they are sixteen.
- 3) The school year in England begins on 1 September.
- 4) When pupils are eleven, they start primary school.
- 5) Pupils play a lot in primary school.
- 6) Teachers often take primary school children to museums.
- 7) Primary school children must be able to read, write, count, and draw.
- 8) Secondary school begins when pupils become eleven.

B. Say what you can about schools in England and Wales.



По закону образование в Англии является обязательным для всех детей в возрасте от 5 до 16 лет. Большинство из них посещают бесплатные государственные школы (**state schools**), но некоторые родители посылают детей в частные школы, самыми престижными из которых являются так называемые **public schools**. К старейшим школам такого типа относятся **Eton, Harrow и Rugby**. Обучение в них достаточно дорогое. Учащиеся государственных школ проводят в начальной школе (**primary school**) семь лет. В возрасте 5 лет они поступают в подготовительный класс (**reception class**) школы для малышей (**infant school**) и учатся здесь два года до 7 лет. Затем они переходят в собственно начальную школу (**junior** ['dʒu:njə] **school**), где обучаются ещё 5 лет. В 12 лет начинается обучение в средней школе.

Do It on Your Own

10. Give answers to these questions.

- 1) — Sam is not a university student, is he?
— (Нет, он не студент.)
- 2) — He goes to school, doesn't he?
— (Да, ходит.)
- 3) — It never rains here in winter, does it?
— (Да, не идёт.)
- 4) — You didn't live in the country last summer, did you?
— (Да, не жил.)

¹ **secondary** ['sekəndəri] **school** — средняя школа

- 5) — You are not going to the cinema, are you?
— (Нет, иду.)
- 6) — Mary hasn't got a mobile, has she?
— (Да, у нее нет мобильного телефона.)
- 7) — Harris left for Kiev last Monday, didn't he?
— (Да нет, не уехал.)
- 8) — Boris won't send her a letter, will he?
— (Да нет, пошлёт.)
- 9) — We know nobody here, do we?
— (Нет, знаем.)
- 10) — Jane couldn't skate last winter, could she?
— (Да, не умела.)

11. Use *say* or *tell* to complete the sentences.

1) Can you ... it again, please? 2) "Please stop talking," ... the teacher. 3) Do you think Colin is ...ing us the truth? 4) Jane ... she likes horses. 5) What story will you ... us today? 6) Everyone ... that the weather is going to change soon. 7) Never ... lies, my boy. 8) When you meet new people, first ... them your name. 9) Mother ... I have a talent for ...ing fairy tales. 10) Will you ... me your telephone number.

12. Check yourself.

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
10	10	
12	11	

Step Three

Do It Together

1. Listen to the questions. Choose the right answer, ⓐ (145).

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1) a) Yes, they do. | b) No, they don't. |
| 2) a) Yes, they do. | b) No, they don't. |
| 3) a) Yes, they do. | b) No, they don't. |
| 4) a) Yes, they are. | b) No, they aren't. |
| 5) a) Yes, they must. | b) No, they mustn't. |



- 6) a) Yes, it is.
7) a) Yes, you can.
8) a) Yes, it is.

- b) No, it isn't.
b) No, you can't.
b) No, it isn't.

2. Listen, 🎧 (146). Which is right?

1) Sharon goes to ... school.

a) primary

b) secondary

2) Sharon ... her school.

a) likes

b) doesn't like

3) She ... classes on Saturdays.

a) has

b) doesn't have

4) Sharon must be at school at

a) 8.40

b) 8.50

5) Sharon's uniform is

a) like this



b) like this



6) After school Sharon plays

a) grass hockey

b) ice hockey

7) She likes

a) listening to music and roller skating

b) listening to music and skating

3. Complete the sentences.

draw, carry, borrow, find, learn, tell

1) Where's my red felt-tip? I can't ... it.

2) May I ... your glue, please? I want to put this photo in my album¹.

¹ an album ['ælbəm] — альбом

- 3) Do you ... many words at your English lessons?
- 4) I'm very happy and want to ... everyone about it.
- 5) He didn't have a school bag and ... his textbook under his arm.
- 6) Will you ... me a dog, please? Here is a pencil.
- 7) If you don't ... me the truth, I'll be very angry.
- 8) Could you help me to ... these books upstairs to the English room?
- 9) All these pictures are my father's. He can ... very well.
- 10) Alice ... my ruler yesterday and didn't give it back to me.
- 11) Mary ... to play the piano when she was seven.
- 12) It is raining and all people are ... umbrellas.

MEMO

В английских словосочетаниях со словами **school, university, college, work, hospital, bed, church** не используется артикль в случаях, когда их смысл несколько меняется и, употребляя их, мы говорим не о здании или помещении (школы, университета и т. д.), а о происходящей в них деятельности:

to go to school — ходить в школу, учиться в школе

to be at school — учиться в школе

to go to university — учиться в университете

to be at university — быть студентом университета

to go to work — ходить на работу

to be at work — быть на работе

to go to hospital — лечь в больницу

to be in hospital — лежать в больнице

to go to bed — ложиться спать

to be in bed — лежать в постели

to go to church — ходить в церковь

4. Complete the sentences. Use the words from the "MEMO".

- 1) If you are tired, you should
- 2) All English children ..., when they are five.
- 3) My brother is a student, he is
- 4) Cathie is ill and must
- 5) At what time does your father ...? — His work begins at 9, so he leaves home at 8.

6) Do you always ... on Sundays? — Yes, I do. There is a nice little church near my house.

7) It's 12 o'clock at night! Why are you not ...?

8) Are you a university student or ...?

5. Learn how to pronounce and use the new words, 🗣️ (147).

A.

education [ˌedʒuˈkeɪʃn] — образование

form [fɔ:m] — класс, группа учащихся

form teacher — классный руководитель

age [eɪʒ] — возраст

free [fri:] — 1) свободный, незанятый; 2) бесплатный

subject [ˈsʌbdʒɪkt] — предмет (учебный)

break [breɪk] — перемена

term [tɜ:m] — четверть, семестр, триместр

B.

education: primary education, secondary education, higher education; to have (get) a good education. Mrs Morrison wants to give her children a university education.

form: Do you know this boy? — Yes, he is in my form. She is now in the sixth form¹.

age: at the age of five, from an early age. In Russia children go to primary school at the age of six. At what age does secondary school begin?

free: 1) a free day, a free man, a free afternoon. Do you have any free time on Tuesday? Are you free at six in the evening? 2) a free education, free school lunches. The coffee was free. The swimming pool is free to hotel guests².

subject: school subjects, university subjects, to do a subject. How many subjects do you do at school? Social education is a difficult subject. My favourite subject is physical education.

break: to work with a break, to take a break, a lunch break, a coffee (tea) break.

term: a school term, a university term. When does the second term begin?

¹ Название **sixth form** (6 класс) осталось от прежней системы градации этапов обучения, согласно которой в средней школе было пять обязательных классов (*forms*), а в 6 классе (*sixth form*) обучались только те, кто хотел поступить в университет и кого школа считала достойным продолжить обучение.

² a **guest** [ɡest] — гость



В английском языке, как и в других языках мира, есть синонимы — слова, сходные по своему значению, например: start — begin, stop — finish, class — lesson, pleasant — nice. Слова **class** и **form** тоже являются синонимами в значении «группа учеников». Вы можете сказать: My class is big или My form is big. Но если вы говорите об этапе обучения, употребляйте слово **year**: I'm in the seventh year. (Я учусь в седьмом классе.) I'm a year seven student. (Я ученик седьмого класса.) Next year I'll be a year eight student. (На следующий год я буду учиться в восьмом классе.)

6. A. Which of these words can come together?

Example: short term.

easy, difficult, free, short, long, early, lunch, coffee, first

education, term, break, age, subject, form

B. Look at this timetable of an English school. How different is it from your own?

	MON	TUES	WED	THURS	FRI
Lesson 1	Religious Education	Maths	Social Education	English	Art
(break)					
Lesson 2	History	Science	Music	Science	Geography
Lesson 3	English		French	Physical Education (PE)	Maths
(break)					
Lesson 4	Maths	History	Information Technology	Maths	Physical Education
Lesson 5	Geography	Art		French	English



Большинство учащихся Англии и Уэльса (= 95%) получают среднее образование в общедоступных государственных школах (**state comprehensive schools**), куда принимают всех детей без экзаменов. В средней школе учащиеся проводят пять лет, нумерация параллелей сквозная. Так, учащиеся начальной школы, в зависимости от года обучения, называются **year one students — year six students**, а учащиеся средней школы соответственно **year seven students — year eleven students**. Обязательное среднее образование завершается в возрасте 16 лет в конце 11 класса, когда все учащиеся сдают экзамен на аттестат (**General Certificate of Secondary Education Exam, or GCSE exam**). Если учащиеся хотят продолжить своё образование и подготовиться к поступлению в университет, они идут либо в технические колледжи (**technical colleges**), либо в так называемые колледжи 6 класса (**sixth form colleges**), либо продолжают обучение в 6 классе (**sixth form**) своей средней школы, если таковой имеется.

7. Listen, (148), and repeat.

School Subjects

history [ˈhɪstəri] — история

geography [dʒiˈɒɡrəfi] — география

mathematics [ˌmæθəˈmætiks] — математика

maths [mæθs] — математика

science [ˈsaɪəns] — естественнонаучный предмет, включает физику, химию, биологию

physics [ˈfɪziks] — физика

biology [baɪˈɒlədʒi] — биология

chemistry [ˈkemɪstri] — химия

literature [ˈlɪtərəʃə] — литература

art [ɑ:t] — изобразительное искусство

information technology (IT) [ˌɪnfəˈmeɪʃn tekˈnɒlədʒi] — информатика

religious [rɪˈlɪdʒəs] **education** — религиозное образование

physical [ˈfɪzɪkl] **education** — физкультура

social [ˈsəʊʃl] **education** — обществоведение

8. Read the text. Is the English school year different from the Russian school year?

SCHOOLS IN ENGLAND AND WALES (2)

Secondary education begins in the country at the age of 12. Most¹ pupils go to state comprehensive schools. Parents do not pay for their education. It is free. Pupils usually have five lessons five

¹ **most** [məʊst] — большинство




12. Check yourself.

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
10	6	
11	6	

Step Four

Do It Together

1. What subjects are missing here? Listen,  (149), and complete the table.



	MON	TUES	WED	THURS	FRI
Lesson 1	Religious Education	Information Technology			
(break)					
Lesson 2		French		Maths	
Lesson 3			English		Maths
(break)					
Lesson 4	Maths		Social Education	Geography	
Lesson 5	Art	Physical Education	Music		

2. Complete the text with the new words.

RUSSIAN SCHOOLS

In Russia secondary e... usually begins at the a... of ten. In most schools parents do not pay for their children, these schools are f... . Secondary school pupils do different s...s: Russian, maths, Russian literature, chemistry, physics, art and others. They usually go to school five days a week from half past eight in the morning to two or three in the afternoon. They have ten or fifteen minute b...s after every lesson and a longer lunch b... .

The Russian school year usually has four t...s and four school holidays in autumn, winter, spring, and summer. The summer holidays are the longest.

3. Look at the table and complete the sentences after it.

England and Wales		Age	Russia		
School	Class/year		Year	School	
Primary school	Infant school	Reception class	5—6	Primary school	
		year one	6—7		year one
	Junior school	year two	7—8		year two
		year three	8—9		year three
		year four	9—10		year four
		year five	10—11		year five
Secondary school	Exams	year six	11—12	year six	
		year seven	12—13	year seven	
		year eight	13—14	year eight	
		year nine	14—15	year nine	
		year ten	15—16	year ten	
Technical college Sixth form college Sixth form (Secondary school)	Exams	year eleven	16—17	year eleven	
		year	17—18	Secondary school	
twelve	18—19	Upper secondary school			
year thirteen	6th form				

- 1) In England children go to school when they are ..., but in Russia they usually begin their school education at the age of
- 2) In England they stay in ... school longer than in Russia.
- 3) In England primary school has two steps: ... and ..., but in Russia it doesn't.
- 4) In England children go to secondary school when they are ... but in Russia they go to secondary school at the ... ten or eleven.

- 5) In England pupils stay in secondary school ... years, but in Russia they stay in secondary school ... years.
- 6) In England they take exams after ... and ..., but in Russia
- 7) English schools have the sixth form for those who want to go to ..., but in Russia they get ready for ... in the tenth and eleventh



По традиции в большинстве английских школ успехи учащихся оцениваются по пятибалльной шкале **A, B, C, D, E**. Высший балл — **A** (отлично), низший — **E** (очень слабо). Иногда учителя добавляют знаки **++ (plus)** или **-- (minus)** к этим оценкам. Например, **B+** или **C-**.

4. Look at Don's and Emma's end-of-term reports¹ and speak about their results².

Example: In English Don is better than Emma.

Or: In English Emma is worse than Don.

Don		Emma	
English	B+	English	B
Maths	A	Maths	D
French	C	French	A+
History	B-	History	A
Social Education	A	Social Education	B
Religious Education	B+	Religious Education	B
Geography	B	Geography	C
Information Technology	A+	Information Technology	C
Music	D	Music	B
Art	B	Art	B+
Physical Education	A	Physical Education	B-

¹ a report [rɪ'pɔ:t] — *зд.*: отчёт об успеваемости

² a result [rɪ'zʌlt] — результат

5. Listen to the text, 🎧 (150). Learn to use these.



- 1) to be afraid of something — бояться чего-л.
Are you afraid of dogs?
- 2) to be sure of something — быть уверенным в чём-л.
Mike is sure of his friends.
- 3) to be fond of something — очень любить что-л.
My sister is fond of art.
- 4) to be surprised at something — удивиться (удивляться) чему-л.
The English pupils were surprised at some Russian traditions.
- 5) to be good at something — быть способным к чему-л.
A lot of pupils in my class are very good at English.

MEMO

В таких словосочетаниях, как те, с которыми вы только что познакомились, очень важно запомнить, какой именно предлог используется после того или иного глагола. Заучивайте глаголы вместе со следующими за ними предлогами.

6. Complete the questions. Answer them.

- 1) What school subjects are you fond ...?
- 2) And what school subjects are you good ...?
- 3) Who in your class is very good ... English?
- 4) Are you afraid ... tests and exams?
- 5) Are you interested ... Russian literature?
- 6) Are you surprised ... the fact that in English schools there are no subjects like biology, physics and chemistry?
- 7) School years are the best time in one's life. Are you sure ... it?

7. Learn how to pronounce and use the new words, 🎧 (151).



A.

language [ˈlæŋgwɪdʒ] — язык

foreign [ˈfɔrɪn] — иностранный

modern [ˈmɒdn] — современный

mark [mɑ:k] — оценка, отметка

rule [ru:l] — правило

group [gru:p] — группа

classmate [ˈklɑ:smeɪt] — одноклассник

B.

language: a difficult language, an easy language. What languages can he speak?

foreign: a foreign language, a foreign country. How many foreign languages do you know?

modern: modern history, modern languages, modern clothes.

What do you think of modern art?

mark: a good mark, to give a mark, to put a mark, to get a mark, a mark for an answer, a mark in a subject. What mark did you get in geography yesterday?

rule: an easy rule, a difficult rule. English spelling rules are difficult, aren't they?

group: a group of people, a group of pupils, a group of tall trees. A group of us is going to Moscow for a day. How many English groups are there in your form?

classmate: A classmate is a pupil of the same class in a school or college. We were classmates four years ago.

8. What do they mean? Give the Russian equivalents to these words.

1) school + mate = schoolmate

Ann is my schoolmate, we go to school together.

2) school + day = schoolday

How many schooldays a week do you have?

3) school + days = schooldays

My mother thinks that her schooldays were a very happy time.

4) school + age = school age

Is Jenny a school age child?

5) school + year = school year

When does the school year begin in England?

6) school + leaver = school-leaver

My brother Peter is 18, he is a school-leaver. He is thinking of going to university.

7) school + house = schoolhouse

We saw the roof of the schoolhouse behind the trees.

9. Listen to the dialogues, (152). Act them out.

1.

SASHA. I say Ben, what do you think of our English class?

BEN. It was very interesting. I'm surprised. Your friends speak English really well. How many English classes do you have a week?

SASHA. Three. This year we have English on Monday, Wednesday, and Friday. And what foreign languages do you learn at school?

BEN. In the first and in the second forms all my schoolmates do one modern language — French. Then we can choose.



If you're good at it, you can learn it longer, but if you want, you can stop doing it.

SASHA. Do you mean that in your school pupils can learn a foreign language only for two years?

BEN. Yes. But if they like modern languages, they can learn not only French but take German or Spanish for three more years.

SASHA. How interesting and how different from our school. Pupils in Russia learn foreign languages much longer.

2.

ANDREW. Hi, Meg! Why are you so sad?

MEG. I got a bad mark in history.

ANDREW. Really? I'm surprised. Isn't history your favourite subject?

MEG. It is. I'm rather fond of history but my answer was really very poor. I was not ready for the lesson.

ANDREW. Cheer up!¹ You'll learn everything and will get good marks. It's easy for you, isn't it? My problem is much worse.

MEG. What is it? What's the matter?

ANDREW. I'm very bad at mathematics. I hate doing sums². I don't understand many rules. I think I can't learn the subject.

MEG. There, there...³ I'm sure things aren't as bad as you say. Let's work together. I enjoy maths and I think I can help you.

Do It on Your Own

10. Write more words which can go together.

- foreign* language, book, ..., ..., ...
- modern* school, world, ..., ..., ...
- new, interesting, ..., ..., ... *language*.
- good, ..., ..., ... *group*.

¹ **Cheer** [tʃɪə] up! — Не грусти! (разг.)

² **to do sums** [sʌmz] — решать примеры

³ **There, there...** — Ну-ну...

11. Complete the sentences.

afraid, sure, fond, surprised, good, interested

- 1) My younger brother is ... in modern languages.
- 2) Little Jim is ... of music. He can play the piano for hours.
- 3) Is Ann ... at French or German? — I think her German is better.
- 4) When Willy was small, he was ... of dogs.
- 5) I'm not ... of his address. Let's call him.
- 6) My mother was ... at my good marks this term.

12. Check yourself.

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
11	6	

Step Five

Do It Together

1. Listen to the text, (153). Which is right?

- 1) In the interview¹ Yura is speaking about his
 - a) town
 - b) school
 - c) home
- 2) Yura's school is about ... years old.
 - a) 40—50
 - b) 50—60
 - c) 60—70
- 3) Yura's school is big, nearly ... pupils.
 - a) 10,000
 - b) 100
 - c) 1,000
- 4) English primary and secondary schools are usually situated in
 - a) different places
 - b) one place
- 5) Yura is in form
 - a) 7 "A"
 - b) 7 "B"
 - c) 7 "C"
- 6) There are ... pupils in Yura's form.
 - a) 34
 - b) 35
 - c) 36
- 7) Yura's best friends are his
 - a) classmates
 - b) schoolmates

¹ an interview [ˈɪntəvjʊ:] — интервью



2. Answer the questions.

- 1) What modern languages do you know?
- 2) What foreign languages do pupils learn in Russian schools?
- 3) How many groups are there in your form when you learn English?
- 4) What marks do you usually get in Russian, PE and maths?
- 5) Which of your classmates can speak English well?
- 6) English spelling rules are difficult, aren't they?
- 7) Which is more difficult: to learn a rule or to understand it?

MEMO

Обратите внимание на то, как образуются вопросы к подлежащему и как строятся краткие ответы к ним.

Who comes to school at nine?	I do. (Jim does.)
Who is going to university?	We are. (I am.)
Who has got a pet at home?	They have. (She has.)
Who will tell me a story?	Dad will.
What was over last Friday?	Our holidays were./The festival was.
What opened two hours ago?	The gift shop did.
Who gave you the book?	My sister did.
Who should go shopping?	You should.

3. How much do you know about your classmates?

- 1) Who usually comes to school earlier than the others¹?
- 2) Who is often late for classes?
- 3) Who is very good at sciences?
- 4) Who is very good at foreign languages?
- 5) Who can work on the computer?
- 6) Who can sing or play a musical instrument?
- 7) Who has a talent for drawing or painting?
- 8) Who was born in another town?
- 9) Who came to this school only not long ago?
- 10) Who is going to university after school?
- 11) Who is spending the coming summer in the country?
- 12) Who will finish this school year with very good marks?

¹ the others [ˈʌðəz] — другие, все остальные

В английском языке для усиления смысла прилагательных употребляются слова **such** ['sʌtʃ] — *такой, такая, такое* и **so** [səʊ] — *так*. Ср.: *Mary is such a happy girl. Mary is so happy.* Как видно из примеров, после **such** употребляется сочетание прилагательного с существительным (*such a good car, such a terrible day*), а после **so** используется только прилагательное (*so nice, so wonderful*).

Обратите внимание на употребление артиклей в подобных предложениях:

It was such a cold day. (исчисляемое существительное в ед. числе)

They were such cold days. (исчисляемое существительное во мн. числе)

It was such cold weather. (неисчисляемое существительное)

4. Complete the sentences. Use *such* or *so*.

1) Last Thursday our teacher gave us ... difficult texts. 2) English is ... a difficult foreign language. — I don't think so. I find English ... easy. 3) The film we saw last week was ... boring. 4) Paul McCartney is ... a famous British singer. 5) James' books are ... interesting. 6) My granny tells me ... wonderful stories before I go to bed. 7) My grandad lives ... a quiet life. 8) Roses are ... beautiful flowers. 9) Your daughter is ... beautiful. 10) Sam is ... selfish but his sister is ... a pleasant girl. 11) Bob is a journalist. He is ... a successful journalist. 12) Our trip was ... terrible because of the weather.

5. Listen to the dialogue, (154). Read and act it out.

TELEPHONE TALK

- JOHN. Hello! Hello! Is that you, Yura? It's John speaking.
 YURA. Oh, hi, John! It's good to hear you. How are you?
 JOHN. Fine, thank you. And how are you? How are your parents and Lena?
 YURA. We are all fine, thank you. Lena and I are going to the country tomorrow to stay there for two weeks.
 JOHN. Are you? Is your school over? We still have classes. My summer holidays begin on 20 July.
 YURA. I'm sorry for you. We are free now. And I can say that I'm really happy that the school is over.



- JOHN. I can understand you. What are you going to do when you come back from the country?
- YURA. We are all going to the Black Sea, to the place where we spent our holidays last summer.
- JOHN. Oh, good. You said you liked it there.
- YURA. I did. And you? Are you going anywhere in August?
- JOHN. Father is going to the USA on business and he is taking us there. Isn't it wonderful? We are going to stay there for a month. I can't wait¹ to go there!
- YURA. The USA? Lucky you!² Will you send me a postcard?
- JOHN. I'll send you postcards from all the places we are going to visit. And I'll call you when I return to London.
- YURA. Thank you. Enjoy your summer!
- JOHN. I will. Say hello to Lena, your mum and dad.
- YURA. Sure. Bye for now.
- JOHN. Bye! Have a good time!

6. Speak about your school and your form.

- 1) type and number of school
- 2) size, location³, garden
- 3) classrooms, halls
- 4) gym, swimming pool
- 5) form you are in
- 6) subjects, favourite subjects
- 7) classmates
- 8) free time
- 9) school year (terms) and holidays

7. A. How much do your friends know about English schools? Work in pairs and find out.

- 1) when the school year usually starts;
- 2) how many terms there are in a school year;
- 3) what holidays pupils usually have;
- 4) how many forms there are in a secondary school;
- 5) at what age children usually start and leave school;
- 6) what subjects secondary school pupils usually have;
- 7) how many classes a day they usually have;
- 8) if all schools in the country are state schools;

¹ I can't wait [weɪt]... — Не могу дождаться...

² Lucky you! — Везёт тебе!

³ location [lə'keɪʃən] — местоположение

9) what exams schoolchildren have when they leave school at 16;
10) to what school most children go when they are 11 and older.

B. Compare Russian and English schools.

8. Listen, (155), and repeat.

School, family and friends,
School, family and friends
Help me to have a happy day.
I always do remember them
When I'm far away.
School, family and friends
Are always in my heart.
And I'm never sad
Even when we are apart.
Next year we shall have
A new successful start.

помню

далеко

сердце

даже, разлучены

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

What is your idea of a very good school?

Do It on Your Own

9. Article *a* or *no article*?

1) This is such ... clever answer! 2) Bob and Ray are such ... good friends. 3) It's such ... sunny weather we are having today! 4) Such ... cold days are very unusual here. 5) It's such ... long and boring story. 6) The party was such ... fun. I loved it. 7) A million roubles is such ... big money. 8) Such ... people as Don always tell the truth. 9) I rather like such ... quiet music. 10) The British Museum is such ... place where you can learn a lot about the world history.

10. Look at the pictures. Answer the questions.

LONG BREAK

A. Now.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1) Who is reading a book? | 5) Who is playing football? |
| 2) Who is watering the plants? | 6) Who is talking to the teacher? |
| 3) Who is sitting on the bench? | |
| 4) Who is practising long jumps? | |



1.



2.



3.



4.



5.



6.

B. Yesterday.

- 1) Who was drawing pictures?
- 2) Who was eating an ice cream?
- 3) Who was playing chess?

- 4) Who was drinking coke?
- 5) Who was running a race?
- 6) Who was singing?



1.



2.



3.



4.



5.



6.

C. Usually.

- 1) Who usually talks?
- 2) Who usually sits in the sun?
- 3) Who usually eats sandwiches?
- 4) Who usually plays basketball?
- 5) Who usually listens to music?
- 6) Who usually does sums?



Roy



Tom

Denis



Kate

Jenny



Ben



Tracy



Sue

11. Check yourself.

Exercise No.	Maximum result	Your result
9	10	
10	18	

Формулировки заданий

- Act out the dialogue.** — Разыграйте диалог.
- Answer the questions.** — Ответьте на вопросы.
- Article "a/an", "the" or no article.** — Поставьте артикль a/an, the, где это необходимо.
- Ask questions.** — Задайте вопросы.
- Can you say it differently?** — Выразите это иначе.
- Check.** — Проверьте (по аудиозаписи).
- Check and repeat.** — Проверьте (по аудиозаписи) и повторите.
- Choose the right answer (word).** — Выберите правильный ответ (слово).
- Compare them.** — Сравните их.
- Complete the dialogues.** — Закончите диалоги.
- Complete (the form, the table).** — Заполните анкету, таблицу.
- Complete the sentences (with new words).** — Закончите предложения (используя новые слова).
- Correct the sentences.** — Исправьте предложения.
- Count the regular and irregular verbs.** — Сосчитайте правильные и неправильные глаголы.
- Do it on your own.** — Учимся самостоятельно.
- Do it together.** — Учимся вместе.
- Form negations (questions).** — Переделайте предложения в отрицательные (в вопросы).
- Learn how to pronounce and use the new words.** — Научитесь правильно произносить и использовать новые слова.
- Learn some new words.** — Выучите новые слова.
- Listen to the questions.** — Послушайте вопросы.
- Listen and repeat.** — Послушайте аудиозапись и повторите.
- Make up (negative) sentences.** — Составьте (отрицательные) предложения.
- Match the sentences (the words, the parts of the sentences).** — Соедините предложения (слова, части предложений).
- Match... with (to) their descriptions.** — Соедините... с их описаниями.
- Put the lines right.** — Расположите строчки в нужном порядке.
- Put the sentences in the right order.** — Расположите предложения в правильном порядке.
- Put the words in two columns.** — Распределите слова в две колонки.
- Say the same differently.** — Скажите то же самое иначе.
- Say the same in Russian.** — Скажите то же самое по-русски.

- Say "True" or "False". — Скажите, какие утверждения верны, а какие нет.
- Sing along! — Пойте вместе! (Подпевайте)
- These are some verb forms. — Познакомьтесь с формами глаголов.
- Use "some", "a few", "few", "a lot"... — Используйте ...
- What are their opposites? — Подберите слова, противоположные по смыслу.
- What do the (new) words mean? — Скажите, что значат эти (новые) слова.
- What do you think? — Что ты думаешь по этому поводу?
- What word is missing? — Какого слова не хватает?
- Which is true about you? — Скажите, что верно в отношении вас самих.
- Work in pairs. — Поработайте в парах.
- Write these words in the plural. — Напишите эти слова во множественном числе.
- Write these words in the singular. — Напишите эти слова в единственном числе.

Вопросы для самооценки

1. Какие из разделов учебника оказались самыми сложными? Как вы думаете, почему?
2. В каких грамматических явлениях вы допустили ошибки?
3. Какая лексика требует дальнейшей отработки?
4. Что могло бы вам помочь лучше справиться с заданиями по говорению? Письму?
5. Приходилось ли вам при выполнении заданий обращаться за дополнительной помощью к своему учителю? Родителям?
6. Использовали ли вы при выполнении заданий дополнительные ресурсы: справочники, Интернет?
7. Насколько вы довольны своими результатами?

know [nəʊ]	knew [nju:]	знать
learn [lɜ:n]	learned [lɜ:nd]	учить
	learnt [lɜ:nt]	
leave [li:v]	left [left]	уходить, покидать, уезжать
let [let]	let [let]	позволять, давать
make [meɪk]	made [meɪd]	делать, изготавливать
mean [mi:n]	meant [ment]	значить (<i>иметь в виду</i>)
meet [mi:t]	met [met]	встречать
put [pʊt]	put [pʊt]	класть
read [ri:d]	read [red]	читать
ride [raɪd]	rode [rəʊd]	ездить (<i>верхом, на вело- сипеде</i>)
ring [rɪŋ]	rang [ræŋ]	звонить
run [rʌn]	ran [ræn]	бегать
say [seɪ]	said [sed]	сказать
see [si:]	saw [sɔ:]	видеть
send [send]	sent [sent]	посылать
speak [spi:k]	spoke [spəʊk]	говорить
spell [spel]	spelt [spelt]	произносить по буквам
spend [spend]	spent [spent]	тратить, проводить (<i>время</i>)
stand [stænd]	stood [stʊd]	стоять
strike [straɪk]	struck [strʌk]	ударять, бить (<i>о часах</i>)
swim [swɪm]	swam [swæm]	плавать
take [teɪk]	took [tu:k]	брать
teach [ti:tʃ]	taught [tɔ:t]	учить, обучать
tell [tel]	told [təʊld]	сказать, рассказать
think [θɪŋk]	thought [θɔ:t]	думать
understand	understood	понимать
[,ʌndə'stænd]	[,ʌndə'stʊd]	
wear [weə]	wore [wɔ:]	носить, быть одетым
win [wɪn]	won [wʌn]	выигрывать
write [raɪt]	wrote [rəʊt]	писать

Аа

- able** ['eɪbəl] способный, умелый
abroad* [ə'brɔ:d] за границей, за границу
active* ['æktɪv] активный, подвижный
afraid [ə'freɪd] испуганный
to be afraid of бояться кого-л., чего-л.
an **age** [eɪʒ] возраст
an **album*** ['ælbəm] альбом
an **animal** ['ænɪmə] животное
an **answer** ['ɑ:nsə] ответ
to answer a question отвечать на вопрос
any ['eni] какой-то, любой, всякий
anybody ['eni,bɒdi] кто-нибудь
anymore ['eni,mɔ:] больше не, уж не
anyone ['eniwʌn] кто бы то ни был
anything ['eniθɪŋ] что-нибудь
art [ɑ:t] изобразительное искусство, рисование
as soon as [æz'su:n'æz] как только
to ask [ɑ:sk] спрашивать
to ask smb for smth просить у кого-л. что-л.
an **astronaut*** ['æstrɔ:nɔ:t] астронавт, космонавт

Вв

- back** [bæk] обратно
to come back (from school) возвращаться (из школы)
to go back идти назад
to give back вернуть
a **balcony** ['bælkəni] балкон
a **beach** [bi:tʃ] взморье, пляж
on the beach на взморье
because [bi'kɔ:z] потому что
to become (*became*) [bi'kʌm/bi'keɪm] становиться
before [bɪ'fɔ:] до
to believe [bɪ'li:v] верить
a **biography** [baɪ'ɒgrəfi] биография
biology [baɪ'ɒləʒi] биология
to blow (*blew*) [bləʊ/blu:] дуть, взрывать
a **boat** [bəʊt] лодка
a **motor boat** моторная лодка
to go boating кататься на лодке
a **body** ['bɒdi] тело
boring* ['bɔ:ɪŋ] скучный
to borrow [ˈbɒrəʊ] взять в долг, занять
to borrow from smb занять у кого-л.
brave [breɪv] храбрый
to break (*broke*) [breɪk/breɪk] ломать
a **bridge** [brɪdʒ] мост

* Звёздочкой обозначены слова, которые встречаются в учебнике 1—2 раза и не предназначены для заучивания.

to **bring** (*brought*) [brɪŋ/brɔ:t] приносить
a **brush** [brʌʃ] кисточка (для рисования)
to **burn** (*burnt*) [bɜ:n/bɜ:nt] гореть
to **burn a fire** разжигать костёр (камин)
a **bus** [bʌs] автобус
a **bus stop** ['bʌs stɒp] автобусная остановка
to **go by bus** ехать на автобусе
to **miss a bus** опоздать на автобус
to **take a bus** сесть в автобус
business ['bɪznəs] дело, деятельность
on business* по делу, по делам
busy ['bɪzi] занятой
to **buy** (*bought*) [baɪ/bɔ:t] покупать

Сс

a **cabbage** ['kæbɪdʒ] капуста
a **calculator** ['kælkjuleɪtə] калькулятор
a **card** [kɑ:d] карта, карточка
a **bank card** банковская кредитная карточка
a **birthday card** поздравительная открытка ко дню рождения
a **greetings card** поздравительная открытка
a **playing card** игральная карта
a **postcard** почтовая открытка
to **play cards** играть в карты

a **career*** [kə'ɪə] карьера
to **carry** (*carried*) ['kæri/'kæriɪd] нести, носить
to **catch** (*caught*) [kæʃ/kɔ:t] 1) ловить, хватать; 2) садиться (на транспорт)
to **catch a cold** простудиться
to **catch a bus (a train)** сесть в автобус (поезд)
a **CD** [si:'di:] компакт-диск
to **celebrate** ['selɪbreɪt] праздновать, отмечать
to **celebrate a birthday** праздновать день рождения
to **celebrate a holiday** отмечать праздник
central* ['sentrəl] центральный
a **centre*** ['sentə] центр
a **city centre** центр города
a **century*** ['sentʃəri] век, столетие
chalk [tʃ:k] мел
to **change** [tʃeɪnʃ] менять, изменять
to **chat online** [tʃæt'ɒnlaɪn] разговаривать в Интернете
chemistry ['kemɪstri] химия
a **child prodigy** [tʃaɪld 'prɒdɪdʒi] ребёнок-вундеркинд
to **choose** (*chose*) [tʃu:z/tʃəʊz] выбирать
a **church** [tʃɜ:tʃ] церковь
to **go to church** ходить в церковь
a **classmate** ['klɑ:smeɪt] одноклассник
clever ['klevə] умный
a **club** [klʌb] клуб
a **coat** [kəʊt] пальто
a **college*** ['kɒlɪdʒ] колледж

to go to college поступить
в колледж, быть студентом
колледжа
condition* [kən'diʃən] условие
on what condition ...? при
каком условии ...?
a court* [kɔ:t] корт
a tennis court* теннисный
корт
to cross [krɒs] пересекать
curly [ˈkɜ:li] кудрявый

Dd

to dance* [dɑ:ns] танцевать
a daybook [ˈdeɪbʊk] дневник
(ученический)
death [deθ] смерть
debate* [di'beɪt] дискуссия,
спор
to decorate [ˈdeɪkəreɪt] украшать
to decorate smth with smth
украшать что-л. чем-л.
a deer (deer) [dɪə] олень (олени)
a degree [di'ɡri:] градус
degrees Celsius [ˈselsɪəs]
... градусов по Цельсию
(Centigrade) [ˈsentɪɡreɪd]
degrees Fahrenheit
[ˈfærənhaɪt] ... градусов
по Фаренгейту
a diary (diaries) [ˈdaɪəri]
дневник
(дневники)
to write in a diary записы-
вать в дневник(е)
a dictionary [ˈdɪkʃənəri] словарь
to look a word (up) in a dic-
tionary смотреть слово в
словаре
to die [daɪ] умирать
different [ˈdɪfərənt] другой,
разный, отличный

difficult [ˈdɪfɪkəlt] сложный,
трудный
a disco [ˈdɪskəʊ] дискотека
to dive* [daɪv] нырять
a double-decker [ˌdʌblə'dekə]
двухэтажный автобус
to draw (drew) [drɔ:/dru:] рисо-
вать
a drawing [ˈdrɔ:ɪŋ] рисунок
to dream (dreamed, dreamt) of,
about [dri:m/dri:md/dremt]
мечтать о чём-л.
a dream мечта
a dress [dres] платье
during [ˈdʒuərɪŋ] во время,
в течение

Ee

each [i:tʃ] каждый
each of каждый из
each other друг друга
an ear [ɪə] ухо
east [i:st] восток
in the east на востоке
easy [ˈi:zi] лёгкий
education [ˌedʒu'keɪʃən]
образование
religious education [rɪ'lɪdʒəs]
основы религии
physical education
[ˌfɪzɪkəl 'edʒu'keɪʃən] физкуль-
тура
social education
[ˌsəʊʃəl 'edʒu'keɪʃən] общество-
ведение
every [ˈevri] каждый
everybody [ˈevrɪbɒdi] любой
everyone [ˈevriwʌn] всякий
everything [ˈevrɪθɪŋ] всё
an exercise book [ˈeksəsaɪz] тет-
радь
an eye [aɪ] глаз

Ff
fair [feə] светлый
 a **fairy tale*** ['feəri:teɪl] сказка
 to **fall down*** ['fɔ:l'daʊn] падать
famous ['feɪməs] знаменитый
 to **be famous for** быть знаменитым чем-л.
far [fɑ:] далёкий
far away ['fɑ:rəweɪ] далеко
as far as [æz fɑ:'rɛz] насколько
 a **fashion** ['fæʃən] мода
fashionable ['fæʃənəbl̩] модный
favourite ['feɪvərɪt] любимый
 a **felt-tip (pen)** ['feltɪp] фломастер
 a **festival** ['festɪvəl] праздник
 (a) **few** [fju:] (*немного*) мало
 to **fight (fought)** [faɪt/fɔ:t] бороться, сражаться
 to **find (found)** [faɪnd/faʊnd] находить
 a **finger** ['fɪŋɡə] палец руки
 a **finishing tape*** ['fɪnɪʃɪŋ teɪp] финишная лента
 a **fireplace** ['faɪəpleɪs] камин
 to **follow*** ['fɒləʊ] следовать
fond [fɒnd] любящий
 to **be fond of smth** любить что-л.
 a **foot (feet)** [fʊt/fi:t] нога (*ноги*)
force* [fɔ:s] сила
foreign ['fɒrɪn] иностранный
 a **forest** ['fɒrɛst] лес
 a **form** [fɔ:m] класс
 a **form teacher** ['fɔ:m ,ti:tʃə] классный руководитель
 a **fortune-teller*** ['fɔ:tʃən ,telə] гадалка
free [fri:] 1) свободный; 2) бесплатный

friendly ['frendli] дружелюбный, доброжелательный
from [frɒm] из
fun [fʌn] шутка, веселье, забава
 to **have fun** веселиться
 to **be fun** весело
 a **fur coat** ['fɜ:kəʊt] шуба

Gg

to **gather** ['gæðə] собирать(ся)
geography [dʒi'ɒɡrəfi] география
 to **get** [get] получать
 to **get a mark** получать отметку
 a **glove** [glɒv] перчатка
glue [glu:] клей
 to **go** [ɡəʊ] идти
 to **go straight on** идти прямо
 to **go out** выходить (*из дома, чтобы развлечься*)
golden* ['ɡəʊldən] золотистый, золотой
 a **grape (grapes)** [ɡreɪp] виноградина (виноград)
great* [ɡreɪt] великий
greedy ['ɡri:di] жадный
good [ɡʊd] хороший
 to **be good at smth** быть способным к чему-л., преуспевать в чём-л.
 a **goose (geese)** [ɡu:s/ɡi:s] гусь (*гуси*)
 a **group** [ɡru:p] группа

Hh

hair [heə] волосы, волосок
 to **hang (hung)** [hæŋ/hʌŋ] вешать
 to **hang up smth on a hook** повесить что-л. на крючок
 to **happen (to)** ['hæpən] случаться (с)
 to **have** [hæv] иметь

have (*has*) got иметь
a head [hed] голова
to hear (*heard*) [hɪə/hɜ:d] слы-
шать
heavily ['hevili] сильно
heavy ['hevi] 1) тяжёлый;
2) сильный (*дождь, снег*)
a hill [hil] холм
history ['hɪstəri] история
honest ['ɒnəst] честный
hope [həʊp] надежда
a hospital ['hɒspɪtl] больница
to go to hospital лечь в боль-
ницу
to be in hospital лежать
в больнице
a hug [hʌg] объятие
to hug обнимать
to give a big hug горячо об-
нимать

Ii
important [ɪm'pɔ:tənt] важный
to be important for smb
иметь для кого-л. большое
значение
information technology
[ɪnfə'meɪʃən tek'nɒlədʒi] ин-
форматика
an interest ['ɪntrəst] интерес
interested ['ɪntrəstɪd]
заинтересованный
to be interested in интересо-
ваться чем-л.
an interview ['ɪntəvju:] интервью
to interview брать интервью

Jj
a jacket ['dʒækɪt] свитер, куртка
a jacuzzi [dʒə'ku:zi] джакузи
jeans [dʒi:nz] джинсы
a job [dʒɒb] работа
a joke* [dʒəʊk] шутка

a journalist ['dʒɜ:nəlist] журна-
лист
juicy ['dʒu:si] сочный

Kk

to kill [kɪl] убивать
to kill time убивать время
kind [kaɪnd] добрый
kindness* ['kaɪndnəs] доброта
to knock [nɒk] стучать
to knock on the door сту-
чать(ся) в дверь

Ll

a language ['læŋgwɪdʒ] язык
to speak a language гово-
рить на языке
lazy ['leɪzi] ленивый
a leaf (*leaves*) [li:f/li:vz] лист
(*листья*)
to learn (*learned/learnt*)
[lɜ:n/lɜ:nd, lɜ:nt] учить, вы-
учивать
to learn by heart учить на-
изусть
to leave [li:v] покидать, остав-
лять
to leave smth уехать отку-
да-то
to leave for уезжать куда-л.
a leg [leg] нога
leggings ['legɪŋz] леггинсы
a lesson [lesn] урок
to let [let] позволять
let's do it давай(те) сделаем
это
a life [laɪf] жизнь
all one's life всю свою жизнь
light [laɪt] 1) светлый; 2) лёг-
кий
lights [laɪts] огоньки, лампочки
literature ['lɪtrətʃə] литература
(a) little [lɪtl] (*немного*) мало

Mm

- many** ['meni] много (*исчисл.*)
to march [mɑ:tʃ] шагать,
 маршировать
a mark [mɑ:k] оценка
a mark for an answer оценка
 за ответ
a mark in a subject оценка
 по предмету
to give a mark поставить
 оценку
to get a mark получить
 оценку
a market ['mɑ:kɪt] рынок
in the market на рынке
to marry ['mæri] жениться, вы-
 ходить замуж
to marry smb жениться на
 ком-л., выходить замуж за
 кого-л.
to be married to быть жена-
 тым на ком-л., быть заму-
 жем за кем-л.
a match [mætʃ] матч
mathematics (*maths*)
 [ˌmæθə'mætiks/mæθs] матема-
 тика
to mean (*meant*) [mi:n/ment]
 значить, означать
medical ['medɪkl] медицинский
medicine ['medɪsən] медицина
midnight ['mɪdnaɪt] полночь
at midnight в полночь
a minister ['mɪnɪstə] министр
to miss [mɪs] 1) пропускать;
 2) скучать
to miss smth проходить мимо
to miss a bus не успеть на ав-
 тобус
a mitten [mɪtn] варежка
a mobile* ['məʊbaɪl] мобильный
 телефон

- modern** ['mɒdn] современный
money ['mʌni] деньги
a monument ['mɒnjəmənt]
 памятник
a monument to smb памят-
 ник кому-л.
most [məʊst] большинство
mostly ['məʊstli] большей
 частью
a mountain ['maʊntən] гора
in the mountains в горах
a mouth [maʊθ] рот
much [mʌʃ] много (*неисчисл.*)

Nn

- nearly*** ['niəli] близко, около;
 почти
neat [ni:t] аккуратный, опрят-
 ный
a neck [nek] шея
a neighbour ['neɪbə] сосед
news [nju:z] новость, новости
next* [nekst] следующий
next year в следующем году
no [nəʊ] нет
nobody ['nəʊbɒdi] никто
no one ['nəʊwʌn] никто
nothing ['nʌθɪŋ] ничто, ничего
(the) north [nɔ:θ] север
in the north на севере
northeast [ˌnɔ:θ'i:st] северовос-
 ток
northwest [ˌnɔ:θ'west] северо-
 запад

Oo

- to offer*** ['ɒfə] предлагать
official* [ə'fɪʃəl] официальный
old-fashioned [ˌəʊld'fæʃənd] ста-
 ромодный
other ['ʌðə] другой, другие
oval [əʊvəl] овальный

Pp

- a **page*** [peɪʤ] страница
 a **palace** [ˈpæləs] дворец
 a **paper** [ˈpeɪpə] бумага
 a **parade** [pəˈreɪd] парад
 a **patient*** [ˈpeɪʃənt] пациент
 a **pear** [peə] груша
 a **pencil case** [ˈpensəl keɪs] пенал
 a **pencil sharpener** [ˈpensəl
 ʃɑːrəneɪ] точилка
people [ˈpiːpəl] люди
 a **photograph** (*photo*)
 [ˈfəʊtəgrɑːf/ˈfəʊtəʊ] фотогра-
 фия (*foto*)
photography [fəˈtɒgrəfi]
 фотографирование
physics [ˈfɪzɪks] физика
pleasant [pleznt] приятный
 a **plum** [plʌm] слива
 a **policeman** [pəˈliːsmən] поли-
 цейский
 a **postcard** [ˌpəʊst ˈkɑːd]
 почтовая открытка
 a **post office** [ˌpəʊst ˈɒfɪs]
 почтовое отделение
practice* [ˈpræktɪs] практика
 to **practise** практиковаться
 to **prepare (for)** [prɪˈpeə] гото-
 вить(ся)
 a **present** [ˈprezənt] подарок
 to **give smb (as) a present** да-
 рить кому-л. подарок
prime minister* [ˈpraɪmˈmɪnɪstə]
 премьер-министр
 a **princess*** [ˌprɪnˈses] принцесса
 a **profession** [prəˈfeʃən] профес-
 сия
public [ˈpʌblɪk] общественный
 to **put** [pʊt] положить
 to **put on** надеть
pyjamas [pəˈʤɑːməz] пижама

Qq

- a **question** [ˈkwɛstʃən] вопрос
 to **answer a question** отве-
 чать на вопрос
quiet [ˈkwaɪət] тихий, спокой-
 ный
 to **live (have) a quiet life**
 вести спокойный образ
 жизни

Rr

- a **railway** [ˈreɪlweɪ] железная до-
 рога
 a **railway station** железнодоро-
 жная станция
rain [reɪn] дождь
 to **rain** идти (*о дожде*)
 a **raincoat** [ˈreɪnkəʊt] плащ
rather [ˈrɑːðə] достаточно, до-
 вольно
real [riəl] настоящий
really [ˈriəli] действительно
 to **record*** [rɪˈkɔːd] записывать
 a **report*** [rɪˈpɔːt] табель оценок
 a **resort** [rɪˈzɔːt] курорт
rest (the)* [rest] остальные
restaurant [ˈrestərɒnt] ресторан
 a **result** [rɪˈsʌlt] результат
 to **return** [rɪˈtɜːn] возвращаться
 a **return** возвращение
 to **ring (rang)** [rɪŋ/ræŋ] звонить
 to **ring a bell** звонить в зво-
 нок
 to **ring smb up** звонить ко-
 му-л. по телефону
ripe [raɪp] зрелый, спелый
 a **river** [ˈrɪvə] река
up the river вверх по тече-
 нию
down the river вниз по тече-
 нию
 a **road** [rəʊd] дорога

round [raʊnd] круглый
royal ['rɔɪəl] королевский
a rubber ['rʌbə] ластик
a rule [ru:l] правило
a ruler ['ru:lə] линейка

Ss
(the) **same*** [seɪm] тот же
sand [sænd] песок
to **play in/on the sand** играть на песке
sandals [sændlɪz] босоножки, сандалии
a sandcastle ['sænd,kɑ:səl] замок из песка
to **make sandcastles** строить замки на песке
to **say** [seɪ] сказать
a scarf [skɑ:f] шарф
a school [sku:l] школа
primary school ['praɪməri] начальная школа
infant school ['ɪnfənt] школа для детей от 5 до 7 лет
junior school ['dʒu:nɪə] собственно начальная школа
secondary school ['sekəndəri] средняя школа
high school [haɪ] старшие классы школы (*обычно в Америке*)
a season ['si:zən] время года
selfish ['selfɪ] эгоистичный
a service station* ['sɜ:vɪs ,steɪʃən] станция техобслуживания
shapely ['ʃeɪplɪ] красивой формы
to **shine** (*shone*) [[aɪn]/[ɒn]] светить(ся)
a shirt [ʃɜ:t] рубашка
a tee shirt (*T-shirt*) футболка
a sweatshirt толстовка

a shoe (*shoes*) [ʃu:] башмак, туфля (*туфли*)
shorts [ʃɔ:ts] шорты
to **shout** [ʃaʊt] кричать
to **shout at smb** кричать на кого-л.
situated ['sɪtʃueɪtɪd] расположенный
to **be situated** находиться
to **skate** [skeɪt] кататься (*бегать*) на коньках
a skate (*skates*) конёк (*коньки*)
to **ski** [ski:] кататься на лыжах
skiing лыжный спорт, катание на лыжах
downhill skiing [ˌdaʊnˈhɪl] катание на горных лыжах
crosscountry skiing [ˌkrɒsˈkʌntri] бег на лыжах по ровной местности
a skirt [skɜ:t] юбка
slim [slɪm] стройный, худой
to **snow** [snəʊ] идти (*о снеге*)
a snowman ['snəʊmæn] снеговик
soldier* ['səʊldɪə] солдат
some [sʌm] некоторое количество, несколько
somebody ['sʌmbədi] кто-нибудь
someone ['sʌmwʌn] кто-нибудь
something ['sʌmθɪŋ] что-нибудь
south [saʊθ] юг
in the south на юге
southeast [ˌsaʊθˈi:st] юго-восток
southwest* [ˌsaʊθˈwest] юго-запад
a souvenir [ˌsu:vəˈniə] сувенир
special ['speʃəl] особенный

to **spend** (*spent*) [spend/spent] тратить
a **start** [stɑ:t] начало
to **start** начинать
to **stay** (*stayed*) [steɪ] оставаться, останавливаться
to **stay at home** оставаться дома
to **stay in/at a hotel** останавливаться в гостинице
still [stɪl] всё ещё
a **stone** [stəʊn] 1) камень; 2) косточка (*в ягоде*)
stout [staʊt] полный
straight [streɪt] прямой
to **go straight on** идти прямо
to **strike** (*struck*) [straɪk/strak] 1) бить, ударять; 2) бить (*о часах*)
to **strike five** пробить пять
stupid ['stju:pɪd] глупый
a **style*** [stɑɪl] стиль
stylish ['stɑɪlɪʃ] стильный
a **subject** ['sʌbdʒɪkt] предмет
(a) **success** [sək'ses] успех
to **be a success** иметь успех
to **have (a lot of) success** иметь (*большой*) успех
successful [sək'sesfəl] удачный, успешный
a **suit** [su:t] костюм
to **sunbathe** ['sʌnbeɪð] загорать
sunshine ['sʌnʃaɪn] солнце, солнечный свет
a **supermarket** ['su:pə:mɑ:kɪt] супермаркет
sure [ʃʊə] уверенный
to **be sure of smth** быть уверенным в чём-л.
surprised [sə'praɪzd] удивленный
to **be surprised at smth** удивляться чему-л.

a **sweater** ['swetə] свитер
a **sweetheart** ['swi:thɑ:t] любимый (-ая)
a **symbol** ['sɪmbəl] символ

Tt

to **take** [teɪk] брать
to **take a bus (plane)** сесть в автобус (*самолёт*)
to **take off** снимать
a **talent** ['tælənt] талант
to **have a talent for smth** иметь талант к чему-л.
to **talk** [tɔ:k] разговаривать
to **talk to smb** говорить с кем-л.
a **tape*** [teɪp] лента, аудиокассета
a **finishing tape** финишная лента
tasty ['teɪsti] вкусный
to **tell** [tel] 1) сказать; 2) рассказать
to **tell a lie** солгать
to **tell a story** рассказать историю
to **tell a (fairy) tale** рассказать сказку
to **tell the time** сказать время
to **tell the truth** сказать правду
temperature ['tempərətʃə] температура
a **term** [tɜ:m] четверть, триместр
terrible ['terɪbəl] ужасный
a **textbook** ['tekstbʊk] учебник
than [ðən] чем
that* [ðæt] 1) что; 2) который; 3) тот, та
a **toe** [təʊ] палец ноги
tomorrow [tə'mɒrəʊ] завтра

a **tooth** (*teeth*) [tu:θ/ti:θ] зуб (*зубы*)
to **touch*** [tʌtʃ] трогать, касаться
a **tour** [tuə] тур
a **tourist** ['tuərist] турист
traditional [trə'diʃənəl] традиционный
trainers ['treɪnəz] кроссовки
tricycle* ['traɪsɪkl] трехколёсный велосипед
a **trip** [trɪp] путешествие, поездка
trousers ['traʊzəz] брюки
to **turn** [tɜ:n] поворачивать
to **turn right/left** поворачивать направо/налево
turned-up ['tɜ:ndʌp] вздернутый (*о носе*)

Uu

underground [ˈʌndəgraʊnd] метро
to **go by underground** ехать на метро
an underground station станция метро
unfriendly [ʌn'frendli] недружелюбный
a **uniform** ['ju:nɪfɔ:m] форма
unimportant [ˌʌnɪm'pɔ:tənt] неважный
a **university** [ju:nɪ'vɜ:sɪti] университет
to **go to university** учиться в университете
to **be at university** быть студентом университета
until [ʌn'tɪl] до тех пор

Vv

a **victory*** ['vɪktəri] победа

Ww

way* [weɪ] путь, дорога
(the) **west** [west] запад
in the west на западе
wet [wet] сырой, влажный
what [wɒt] что
What is he/she like? Какой он/она человек? Как он/она выглядит?
which [wɪtʃ] который
while [waɪl] пока, в то время как
whom [hu:m] кого, кому
whose [hu:z] чей
to **win** (*won*) [wɪn/wʌn] побеждать, выигрывать
a **wish** [wɪʃ] желание
to **make a wish** загадать желание
to **wish** желать
to **wish a happy birthday** поздравить с днём рождения
a **woman** (*women*) ['wʊmən/'wɪmɪn] женщина (женщины)
work [wɜ:k] работа
to **go to work** идти на работу
to **be at work** быть на работе
(the) **world** [wɜ:ld] мир
world-famous* всемирно известный

Zz

zero ['zɪərəʊ] ноль
above zero выше нуля
below zero ниже нуля

List of Proper Names (Список имён собственных)

- A.D. (Anno Domini)** [ˌeɪˈdiː] нашей эры
the Alps [ælpz] Альпы (*горная цепь в Европе*)
the Andes [ˈændiːz] Анды (*горы на западе Южной Америки*)
Bath [bɑːθ] Бат (*город на юго-западе Англии*)
B.C. (Before Christ) [ˌbiːsiː] до нашей эры (*до Рождества Христова*)
Belgium [ˈbeɪdʒəm] Бельгия
Ben Nevis [ben ˈneɪvɪs] Бен-Невис (*самая высокая гора Великобритании, находится в Шотландии*)
the British Museum [ˌbrɪtɪʃ mjuːˈziːəm] Британский музей
Bristol [ˈbrɪstl] г. Бристоль (*порт на юго-западе Англии*)
Brussels [ˈbrʌsəlz] г. Брюссель (*столица Бельгии*)
Buckingham Palace [ˌbʌkɪŋəm ˈræləs] Букингемский дворец (*резиденция королевы*)
Cambridge [ˈkeɪmbɪdʒ] г. Кембридж
the Caspian [ˈkæspɪən] Каспийское море
the Channel Tunnel [ˌtʃænl ˈtʌnl] тоннель под Ла-Маншем, соединяющий Великобританию и Францию
Christ [kraɪst] Христос
Christian [ˈkrɪstʃən] христианин
Christmas [ˈkrɪsməs] Рождество
the City (of London) [ˈsɪti] Сити (*деловая часть города в центре Лондона*)
Covent Garden [ˌkɒvənt ˈgɑːdn] «Ковент-Гарден» (*Королевский оперный театр*)
Downing Street [ˈdaʊnɪŋ stri:t] Даунинг-стрит (*улица Лондона, где расположена резиденция британского премьер-министра*)
Easter (Festival) [ˈiːstə] Пасха
the Eiffel Tower [ˌaɪfəl ˈtaʊə] Эйфелева башня (*300-метровая металлическая башня в центре Парижа*)
the English Channel [ˌɪŋɡlɪʃ ˈtʃænl] Ла-Манш (*пролив, отделяющий Великобританию от континента*)
Everest (Mount Everest) [ˈevərest] Эверест (*самая высокая гора мира, расположена в Гималаях на границе Тибета и Непала*)
Father Frost [ˈfɑːðə ˈfrɒst] Дед Мороз
Fleet Street [ˈfliːt stri:t] Флит-стрит (*район Лондона, где раньше находились офисы центральных газет*)
Golden Gate Bridge [ˌɡəʊldən ˈgeɪt brɪdʒ] мост «Золотые Ворота» (*соединяет берега бухты Сан-Франциско в Калифорнии (США)*)
Guy Fawkes' Night [ˌɡaɪ ˈfɔːks naɪt] Ночь Гая Фокса (*ночь 5 ноября*)

- the **Holyrood Palace** [ˈhɒlɪruːd ˈpæləs] дворец в г. Эдинбурге (официальная резиденция английских королей в Шотландии)
- the **Hermitage** [ˈhɜːmɪtɪʃ] Эрмитаж (г. Санкт-Петербург)
- the **House of Commons** [ˈhaʊs əv ˈkɒmənz] палата общин британского парламента
- the **House of Lords** [ˈhaʊs əv ˈlɔːdz] палата лордов британского парламента
- the **Huron** [ˈhjuərən] Гурон (второе по величине озеро Великих озёр на границе Канады и США)
- Indian summer** [ˌɪndiən ˈsʌmə] бабье лето
- James I** [ˈdʒeɪmz də ˈfɜːst] Джеймс I (английский король с 1603 по 1625 год)
- the **Kremlin Palace** [ˈkremlɪn ˈpæləs] Кремлёвский дворец
- La Scala** [ləˈskɑːlə] оперный театр «Ла Скала» (г. Милан)
- the **London Museum** [ˌlʌndən mjuːˈziːəm] Лондонский музей
- the **Louvre** [ˈluːvrə] Лувр (знаменитый музей в Париже)
- the **Malý Theatre** [ˌmɑːliː ˈθiːətə] Малый театр
- the **Middle Ages** [ˌmɪdl ˈeɪʤɪz] Средние века (период европейской истории с 1100 по 1500 год и иногда, в более широком смысле, период от 500 года н. э. до 1500 года)
- Milan** [mɪˈlæn] г. Милан
- the **Mississippi** [ˌmɪsɪˈsɪpi] Миссисипи (самая длинная река США, 3779 км)
- Monaco** [ˈmɒnəkəʊ] Монако (государство между Францией и Италией)
- Nelson's Column** [ˈnelnz ˈkɒləm] колонна Нельсона (памятник адмиралу Нельсону на Трафальгарской площади в Лондоне)
- the **Moscow underground (Metro)** [ˌmɒskəʊ ˈʌndəgraʊnd] Московский метрополитен
- Mount Elbrus** [ˌmaʊnt ˈelbərəs] Эльбрус (самая высокая гора на Кавказе)
- the **National Gallery** [ˌnæʃənəl ˈgæləri] Национальная галерея (картинная галерея на Трафальгарской площади в Лондоне)
- Newcastle (upon Tyne)** [ˈnjuːkɑːsəl] Ньюкасл (апон-Тайн) (город и порт на реке Тайн, Англия)
- New Year's Eve** [ˌnjuː jɪz ˈiːv] канун Нового года (31 декабря)
- New Year's Day** [ˌnjuː jɪz ˈdeɪ] 1 января (официальный праздник в Великобритании)
- New York** [ˌnjuː ˈjɔːk] Нью-Йорк (самый крупный город и порт США)
- the **Ob** [əʊb] р. Обь
- the **Ontario** [ɒnˈtɛrɪəʊ] Онтарио (самое маленькое из пяти Великих озёр, США)

- Oxford** ['ɒksfəd] Оксфорд (город на реке Темзе на юге Англии, известен своим университетом)
- Peter the Great** [ˌpi:tə də 'ɡreɪt] Пётр I (Пётр Великий, царь)
- the Post Office (Telecom) Tower** [ˌpəʊst ɒfɪs 'taʊə] «Телеком тауэр» (башня Управления почт в Лондоне)
- the Prado** ['prɑ:dəʊ] галерея Прадо (национальный музей живописи и скульптуры в Мадриде)
- Queen Victoria Memorial** [ˌkwɪːn vɪk'tɔːrɪə mɪ'mɔːrɪəl] памятник королеве Виктории (на площади перед Букингемским дворцом)
- Richmond** ['rɪtʃmænd] Ричмонд (город в Англии)
- San Francisco** [ˌsæn frən'sɪskəʊ] Сан-Франциско (город в Западной Калифорнии, США)
- the Savoy** [sə'vɔɪ] «Савой» (фешенебельный отель в Лондоне)
- the Seine** [seɪn] Сена (река во Франции)
- the Seliger** [se'liɡə] оз. Селигер
- the Sevan** [se'væn] оз. Севан
- the Statue of Liberty** [ˌstætʃuː əv 'lɪbətɪ] статуя Свободы
- St Martin-in-the-Fields** [ˌsænt mɑːtɪn ɪn ðə 'fiːldz] церковь Св. Мартина (на Трафальгарской площади)
- Stratford-on-Avon** [ˌstrætˌfɔːd ɒn 'eɪv(ə)n] Стратфорд (город на юге Англии, в котором родился В. Шекспир)
- St Valentine's Day** [seɪnt 'væləntaɪnz ˌdeɪ] День св. Валентина (14 февраля)
- the Thames** [temz] Темза (река в Англии)
- Tower Bridge** [ˌtaʊə 'brɪdʒ] Тауэрский мост (через Темзу)
- Trafalgar Square** [trəˌfælgə 'skweə] Трафальгарская площадь
- the Tretyakov Gallery** [ˌtretʃəkɒf 'gæləri] Третьяковская галерея
- Trooping the Colour** [ˌtruːpɪŋ ðə 'klɔː] торжественный развод караулов с выносом знамени (проводится ежегодно в Лондоне)
- the Ural Mountains (the Urals)** [ˌjʊərəl 'maʊntənz] Уральские горы
- Vatican City** [ˌvætɪkən 'sɪti] Ватикан (государство-город Ватикан)
- Versailles** [veə'sai] г. Версаль
- Whitehall** ['waɪthɔːl] Уайтхолл (улица Лондона, в районе которой расположено большинство государственных учреждений)
- Wimbledon** ['wɪmbldən] Уимблдон (предместье Лондона, где проводятся ежегодные теннисные турниры)
- Windsor Castle** [ˌwɪnzə 'kɑːsl] Виндзорский замок (резиденция королевы в г. Виндзоре)
- Winter Palace** [ˌwɪntə 'pæləs] Зимний дворец (г. Санкт-Петербург)
- York** [jɔːk] Йорк (город на севере Англии)

Содержание

Unit One. Travelling in Russia and Abroad

Step One	3
Step Two	11
Step Three	17
Step Four	24
Step Five	30

Unit Two. Visiting Britain

Step One	37
Step Two	44
Step Three	51
Step Four	59
Step Five	67

Unit Three. Biography

Step One	80
Step Two	87
Step Three	95
Step Four	101
Step Five	108

Unit Four. Traditions, Holidays, Festivals

Step One	113
Step Two	119
Step Three	127
Step Four	134
Step Five	140

Unit Five. It's a Beautiful World

Step One	149
Step Two	158
Step Three	167
Step Four	176
Step Five	182

Unit Six. The Way We Look	
Step One	187
Step Two	194
Step Three	199
Step Four	206
Step Five	213
Unit Seven. In and Out of School	
Step One	221
Step Two	226
Step Three	233
Step Four	240
Step Five	246
Формулировки заданий	253
Вопросы для самооценки	254
Список неправильных глаголов	255
Англо-русский словарь	257
List of Proper Names	267